2012 Buick LaCrosse Owner Manual

In Brief 1-1
Instrument Panel 1-2
Initial Drive Information 1-4
Vehicle Features 1-17
eAssist Features 1-22
Performance and Maintenance 1-25

Keys, Doors, and Windows 2-1
Keys and Locks 2-2
Doors 2-13
Vehicle Security 2-14
Exterior Mirrors 2-17
Interior Mirrors 2-18
Windows 2-19
Roof 2-22

Seats and Restraints 3-1
Head Restraints 3-2
Front Seats 3-4
Rear Seats 3-11
Safety Belts 3-13
Airbag System 3-22
Child Restraints 3-36

Storage 4-1
Storage Compartments 4-1
Additional Storage Features ... 4-2

Instruments and Controls 5-1
Controls 5-2
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-9
Information Displays 5-27
Vehicle Messages 5-35
Vehicle Personalization 5-43
Universal Remote System 5-49

Lighting 6-1
Exterior Lighting 6-1
Interior Lighting 6-5
Lighting Features 6-7

Infotainment System 7-1
Introduction 7-1
Radio 7-18
Audio Players 7-28
Rear Seat Infotainment 7-47
Phone 7-57
Trademarks and License Agreements 7-80

Climate Controls 8-1
Climate Control Systems 8-1
Air Vents 8-10
Maintenance 8-11

Driving and Operating 9-1
Driving Information 9-2
Starting and Operating 9-17
Engine Exhaust 9-30
Automatic Transmission 9-31
Drive Systems 9-34
Brakes 9-35
Ride Control Systems 9-38
Cruise Control 9-42
Object Detection Systems 9-44
Fuel 9-52
Towing 9-57
Conversions and Add-Ons ... 9-63

Vehicle Care 10-1
General Information 10-2
Vehicle Checks 10-4
Headlamp Aiming 10-30
Bulb Replacement 10-33
Electrical System 10-37
Wheels and Tires 10-47

2012 Buick LaCrosse Owner Manual

Jump Starting 10-94
Towing 10-99
Appearance Care 10-102

Service and Maintenance . . . 11-1
General Information 11-1
Maintenance Schedule 11-3
Special Application Services 11-8
Additional Maintenance and Care 11-9
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts 11-12
Maintenance Records 11-15

Technical Data 12-1
Vehicle Identification 12-1
Vehicle Data 12-2

Customer Information 13-1
Customer Information 13-1
Reporting Safety Defects 13-19
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-20

OnStar 14-1
OnStar Overview 14-1
OnStar Services 14-2
OnStar Additional Information 14-5

Index i-1

The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, BUICK, the BUICK Emblem, and LACROSSE are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle either because they are options that you did not purchase or due to changes subsequent to the printing of this owner manual.

Please refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm each of the features found on your vehicle. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Limited” for Buick Motor Division wherever it appears in this manual.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Canadian Vehicle Owners

Propriétaires Canadiens

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer or from:

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès du concessionnaire ou à l'adresse suivante:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123
Numéro de poste 6438 de langue française
www.helminc.com

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 22859705 B Second Printing

©2011 General Motors LLC. All Rights Reserved.

Using this Manual

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions

Warning messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce them.

Danger indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which will result in serious injury or death.

Warning or **Caution** indicates a hazard that could result in injury or death.

⚠ WARNING

These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

Notice: **This means there is something that could result in property or vehicle damage. This would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty.**

A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see your owner manual for additional instructions or information.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see a service manual for additional instructions or information.

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the Index.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Audio Steering Wheel Controls or OnStar®

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Fog Lamps

: Fuel Gauge

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: LATCH System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Safety Belt Reminders

: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Traction Control/StabiliTrak®

: Windshield Washer Fluid

✍ NOTES

In Brief

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel 1-2

Initial Drive Information

Initial Drive Information 1-4
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 1-4
Remote Vehicle Start 1-4
Door Locks 1-5
Trunk Release 1-6
Windows 1-6
Seat Adjustment 1-6
Memory Features 1-8
Heated and Ventilated Seats 1-9
Head Restraint Adjustment 1-9
Safety Belts 1-9
Passenger Sensing System 1-10
Mirror Adjustment 1-10
Steering Wheel Adjustment 1-11
Interior Lighting 1-11
Exterior Lighting 1-12
Windshield Wiper/Washer 1-13
Climate Controls 1-14
Transmission 1-16

Vehicle Features

Radio(s) 1-17
Satellite Radio 1-17
Portable Audio Devices 1-18
Bluetooth® 1-18
Steering Wheel Controls 1-18
Cruise Control 1-19
Navigation System 1-19
Driver Information Center (DIC) 1-20
Vehicle Personalization 1-20
Ultrasonic Parking Assist 1-20
Power Outlets 1-21
Universal Remote System . . . 1-21
Sunroof 1-21

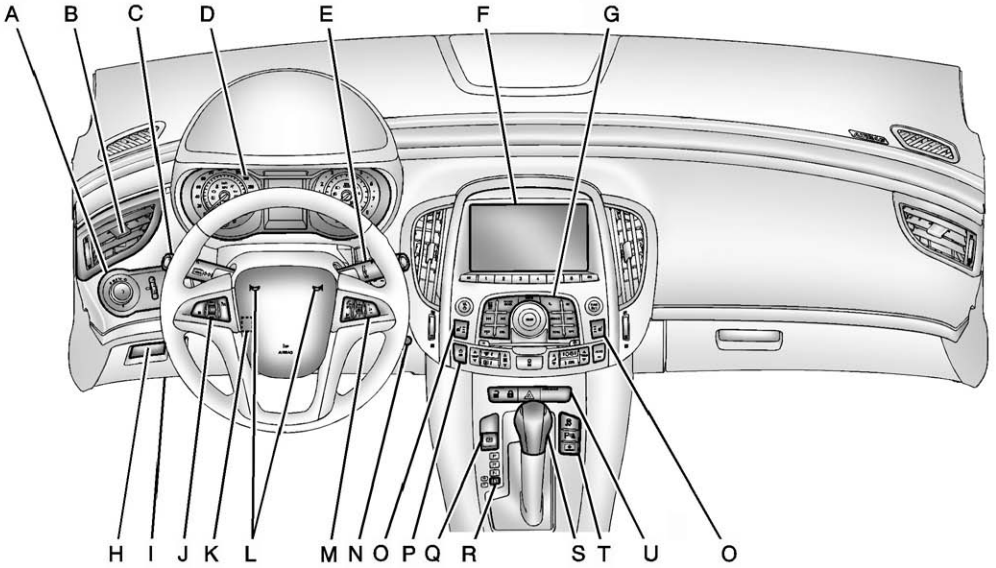
eAssist Features

eAssist® Overview 1-22
High Voltage Safety Information 1-23
Driver Efficiency Gauge 1-23
Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature 1-24
Regenerative Braking 1-24
Battery 1-24
Service 1-25

Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control System (TCS) 1-25
StabiliTrak® System 1-25
Tire Pressure Monitor 1-26
Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 1-26
Engine Oil Life System 1-27
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 1-27
Roadside Assistance Program 1-27
OnStar® 1-28

Instrument Panel



A. *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

Fog Lamps on page 6-5 (If Equipped).

Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-5.

Head-Up Display (HUD) on page 5-31 (If Equipped).

B. *Air Vents on page 8-10*.

C. Turn and Lane-Change Lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-4*.

Driver Information Center Buttons. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27*.

D. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-10*.

Driver Information Center Display. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27*.

E. *Windshield Wiper/Washer on page 5-3*.

F. Infotainment Display Screen.

G. *Infotainment on page 7-1*.

H. *Front Storage on page 4-1*.

I. Data Link Connector (DLC) (Out of View). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-17*.

J. *Cruise Control on page 9-42*.

K. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-2*.

L. *Horn on page 5-3*.

M. *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2* (If Equipped).

N. *Ignition Positions (Key Access) on page 9-18* or *Ignition Positions (Keyless Access) on page 9-20*.

O. *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats on page 3-10* (If Equipped).

P. *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1* (If Equipped).

Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5 (If Equipped).

Q. *Parking Brake on page 9-36*.

R. Shift Lever Position Indicator. See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-31*.

S. Shift Lever. See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-27*.

T. *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-38*.

StabiliTrak® System on page 9-40 (If Equipped).

Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-44.

Rear Window Sunshade on page 2-21 (If Equipped).

U. *Power Door Locks on page 2-12*.

Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-4.

Passenger Sensing System on page 3-29.

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner manual.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter will work up to 20 m (65 ft) away from the vehicle. On vehicles with remote start the distance will be greater.

Press the button to extend the key. The key can be used for all locks. This key is also used for the ignition, if the vehicle does not have pushbutton start.

: Press to unlock the driver door or all doors.

: Press to lock all doors.

Lock and unlock feedback can be personalized.

: Press and hold to open the trunk.

: Press and release one time to locate the vehicle. Press and hold for at least two seconds to sound the panic alarm. Press again to cancel the panic alarm.

See *Keys on page 2-2* and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4*.

Remote Vehicle Start

For vehicles with this feature, the engine can be started from outside the vehicle.

Starting the Vehicle

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing Step 2, press and hold until the turn signal lamps flash, or for about two seconds if the vehicle is not in view.

When the engine starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10-minute time extension. Remote start can be extended only once.

Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-9*.

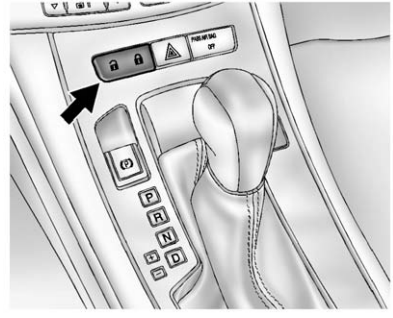
Door Locks

To lock or unlock the doors:

- From inside the vehicle, use the door lock knob or the power door lock controls, pull once on the door handle to unlock it, and a second time to open it.
- From outside, use the key, or press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4*.

See *Door Locks on page 2-11*.

Power Door Locks



: Press to unlock the doors.

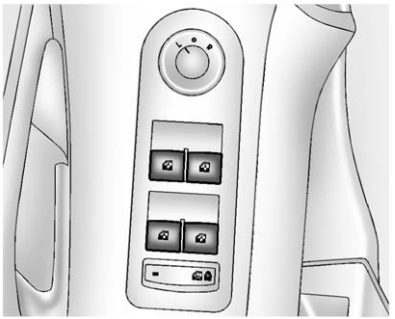
: Press to lock the doors.

See *Power Door Locks on page 2-12*.

Trunk Release

The trunk may be opened by pressing on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or the touch pad located on the rear of the trunk above the license plate. See *Trunk on page 2-13* for more information.

Windows

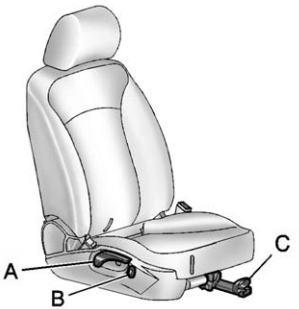


Press the switch to lower the window. Pull the switch up to raise it.

For more information, see *Power Windows on page 2-20*.

Seat Adjustment

Manual Seats



A. Seatback Recline Lever

B. Height Adjustment Switch

C. Seat Position Handle

To adjust the seat position:

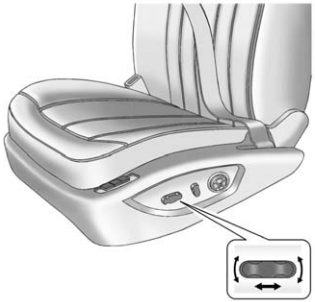
1. Pull the handle (C) under the front of the seat cushion.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the handle (C).
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

Press and hold the top or bottom of the switch (B) to raise or lower the seat. Release the switch (B) when the desired height is reached.

To raise or recline the seatback, use the lever (A) on the outboard side of the seat.

See *Seat Adjustment on page 3-4* and *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-6* for more information.

Power Seats

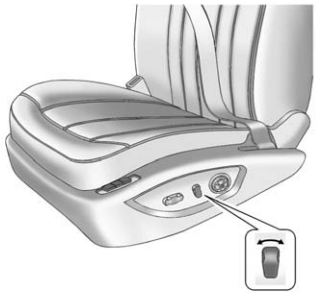


To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by moving the horizontal control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front or rear part of the seat cushion by moving the front or rear of the horizontal control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the control up or down.

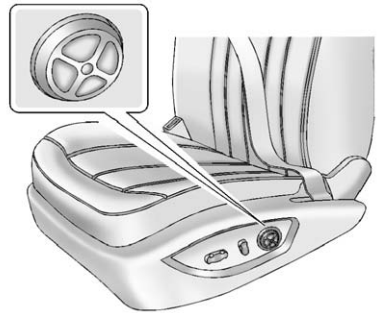
See *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5*.

Power Reclining Seatbacks



To raise or recline the seatback, tilt the top of the vertical control forward or rearward. See *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-6*.

Lumbar Adjustment

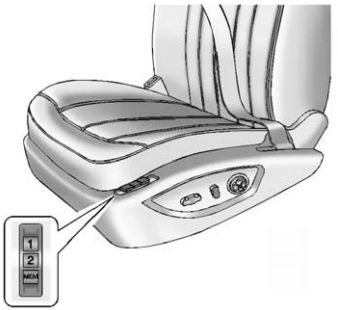


To adjust the lumbar support, if available:

- Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or decrease lumbar support.
- Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower lumbar support.

See *Lumbar Adjustment on page 3-5*.

Memory Features



On vehicles with the memory feature, the “1” and “2” buttons on the outboard side of the driver seat are used to manually save and recall the driver seat and outside mirror positions. These manually stored positions are referred to as Button Memory positions.

The vehicle will also automatically save driver seat and outside mirror positions to the current driver Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter when the ignition is placed in OFF. These automatically stored positions are referred to as RKE Memory positions.

Storing Button Memory Positions

To save positions into Button Memory:

1. Adjust the driver seat, seatback recliner, and both outside mirrors to the desired driving positions.
2. Press and hold MEM (Memory) and “1” at the same time until a beep sounds.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for a second driver using “2.”

To recall the manually saved Button Memory positions, press and hold “1” or “2.” The driver seat and outside mirrors move to the positions stored to those buttons when pressed. Releasing “1” or “2” before the stored positions are reached stops the recall.

To automatically recall RKE Memory positions, unlock the driver door with the RKE transmitter, and open the driver door. On vehicles with Keyless Access, opening the driver door when an RKE transmitter is present will activate the RKE Memory recall. If the driver door is already open, pressing the RKE transmitter button will also activate the RKE Memory recall. The driver seat and outside mirrors will move to the previously saved RKE Memory positions.

See *Memory Seats on page 3-8* for more information.

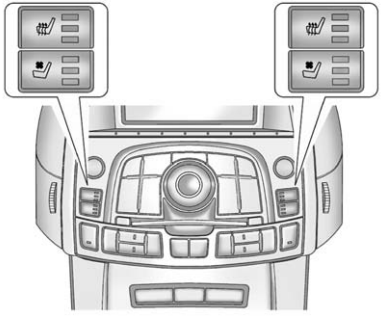
Easy Exit Driver Seat

This feature moves the seat rearward allowing the driver more room to exit the vehicle.

To activate, place the ignition in OFF and open the driver door. If the driver door is already open, placing the ignition in OFF will activate the easy exit driver seat.

This feature is turned on or off using the vehicle personalization menu. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information.

Heated and Ventilated Seats



Heated and Ventilated Seat Buttons Shown, Heated Seat Buttons Similar

If available, the buttons are on the climate control panel. To operate, the ignition must be on.

Press to heat the seat cushion and seatback or , if equipped, to ventilate the seat.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

For more information, see *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats on page 3-10*.

Head Restraint Adjustment

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

For more information see *Head Restraints on page 3-2* and *Seat Adjustment on page 3-4*.

Safety Belts

Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use safety belts properly:

- *Safety Belts on page 3-13*.
- *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly on page 3-14*.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-15*.
- *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44*.

Passenger Sensing System

The passenger sensing system turns off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. No other airbag is affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible on the instrument panel when the vehicle is started. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-29* for important information.

Mirror Adjustment

Exterior

To adjust the mirrors:

1. Turn the control knob to the L (left) or R (right) selecting the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Push the control knob to the left, right, up, or down to adjust the mirror.

Vehicles with the memory feature can store a preferred mirror position. See “Memory Seats” under *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

See *Power Mirrors on page 2-17*.

Manual Foldaway Mirrors

These mirrors can be folded inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, pull the mirror toward the vehicle. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

See *Folding Mirrors on page 2-17*.

Automatic Dimming Feature

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming driver outside mirror. Automatic dimming reduces the glare of the headlamps behind you.

See *Power Mirrors on page 2-17*.

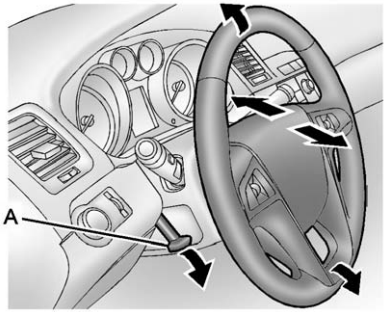
Interior

Adjust this mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle. Hold the mirror in the center to move it up, down, or side to side. To reduce headlamp glare from behind, push the tab forward for daytime and pull it for nighttime use.

Vehicles with OnStar® have three control buttons at the bottom of the mirror. See your dealer for more information on the system and how to subscribe to OnStar. See *OnStar Overview on page 14-1*.

See *Manual Rearview Mirror on page 2-18*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel:

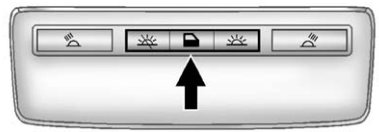
1. Pull the lever (A) down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever (A) up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Interior Lighting

Dome Lamps

The interior lamps control located in the overhead console controls both the front and rear interior lamps.



: Turns the lamps off.

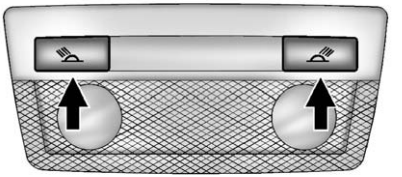
: Turns the lamps on when any door is opened.

: Keeps the lamps on all the time.

Reading Lamps

There are front and rear reading lamps.

The front reading lamps are located in the overhead console.



The rear reading lamps are located in the headliner.

or : Press to turn each lamp on or off.

For more information, see:

- *Dome Lamps on page 6-6*.

Exterior Lighting

The exterior lamp control is located on the instrument panel on the outboard side of the steering wheel.

Turn the control to the following positions:

: Turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released. Turn to off again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

AUTO: Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

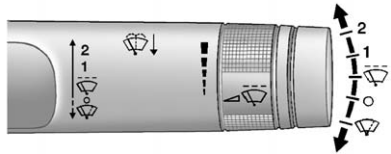
: Turns on the parking lamps, together with the sidemarker lamps, taillamps, license plate lamps, and instrument panel lights.

: Turns on the headlamps, together with the parking lamps, sidemarker lamps, taillamps, license plate lamps, and instrument panel lights.

For more information, see:

- *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.
- *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) on page 6-2*.
- *Fog Lamps on page 6-5*.

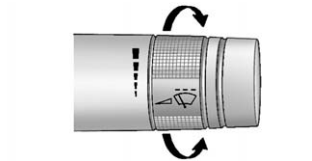
Windshield Wiper/Washer



The windshield wiper lever is on the right side of the steering column. With the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN, move the windshield wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

2: Use for fast wipes.

1: Use for slow wipes.



: Move the lever to , then turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

: Use to turn the windshield wipers off.

: Briefly move the wiper lever down for a single wipe or hold down for several wipes.

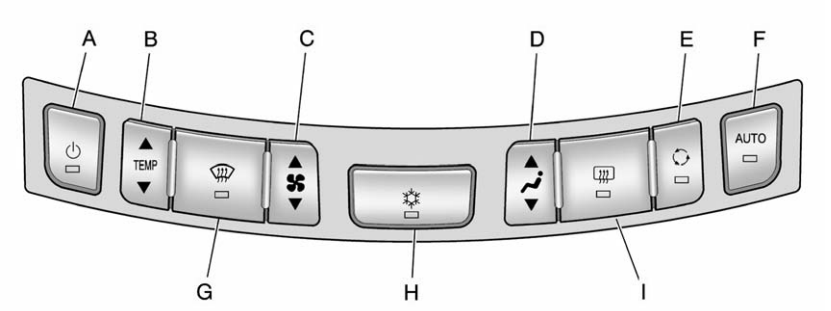
Windshield Washer

Pull the windshield wiper lever to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer on page 5-3*.

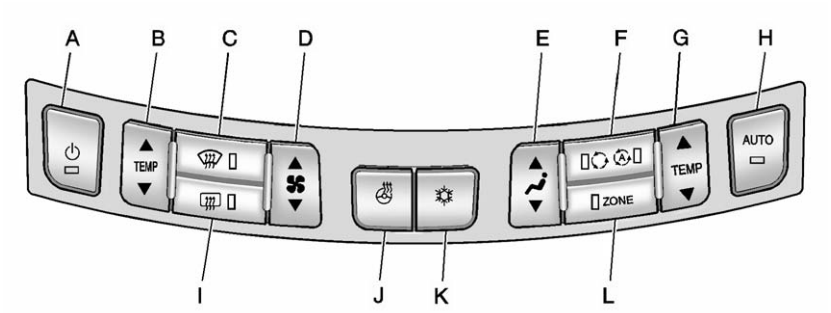
Climate Controls

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with these systems.



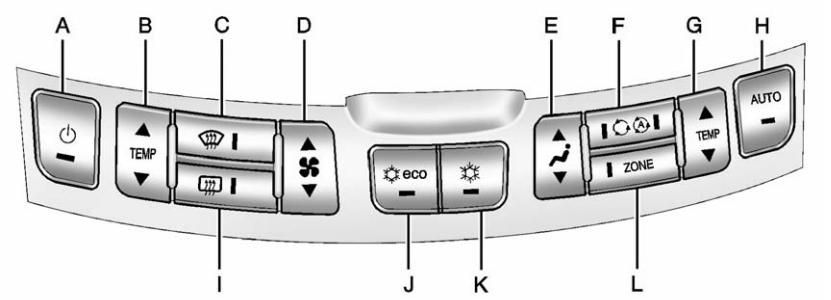
Automatic Climate Control System

A. Power
B. Temperature Control
C. Fan Control
D. Air Delivery Mode Control
E. Recirculation
F. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
G. Defrost
H. Air Conditioning
I. Rear Window Defogger



Dual Automatic Climate Control System for Non-eAssist Vehicles

A. Power
B. Driver Temperature Control
C. Defrost
D. Fan Control
E. Air Delivery Mode Control
F. Recirculation/Automatic Recirculation
G. Passenger Temperature Control
H. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
I. Rear Window Defogger
J. Heated Steering Wheel
K. Air Conditioning
L. ZONE



Dual Automatic Climate Control System for eAssist Vehicles

A. Power
B. Driver Temperature Control
C. Defrost
D. Fan Control
E. Air Delivery Mode Control
F. Recirculation/Automatic Recirculation
G. Passenger Temperature Control
H. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
I. Rear Window Defogger
J. Eco Air Conditioning
K. Comfort Air Conditioning
L. ZONE

See *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1* (If Equipped) or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5* (If Equipped).

Transmission

Automatic Transmission

Driver Shift Control (DSC)

Driver Shift Control (DSC) allows shifting an automatic transmission similar to a manual transmission. DSC can be enabled through the shift lever. See *Manual Mode on page 9-33*.

Vehicle Features

Radio(s)

VOL/ ⏻ : Press to turn the system on and off. Turn to increase or decrease the volume.

RADIO/BAND or SOURCE: Press to choose between FM, AM, or XM™, if equipped.

Menu Knob: Turn to select radio stations.

⏮ : Press to seek the previous station or track.

⏭ : Press to seek the next station or track.

Buttons 1-6: Press to save and select favorite stations.

INFO: Press to show available information about the current station or track.

See *Overview (Radio with CD) on page 7-3* or *Overview (Radio with CD/DVD and MEM) on page 7-5* or *Overview (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-7* for more information about these and other radio features.

Storing a Favorite Station

Stations from all bands can be stored in the favorite lists in any order. Up to six stations can be stored in each favorite page and the number of available favorite pages can be set.

To store the station to a position in the list, press the corresponding numeric button 1 to 6 until a beep is heard.

See “Storing a Station as a Favorite” in *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21*.

Setting the Clock

See *Clock (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 5-5* for more information.

Satellite Radio

Vehicles with an XM™ satellite radio tuner and a valid XM satellite radio subscription can receive XM programming.

XM Satellite Radio Service

XM is a satellite radio service based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM satellite radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast to coast, and in digital-quality sound. A fee is required to receive the XM service.

For more information refer to:

- www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 (U.S.).
- www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677 (Canada).

For more information, see *Satellite Radio on page 7-24*.

Portable Audio Devices

Some vehicles have a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) auxiliary input and a USB port located in the center console. External devices such as iPods®, laptop computers, MP3 players, CD changers, and USB storage devices may be connected, depending on the audio system.

For more information, see *Auxiliary Devices (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-39*.

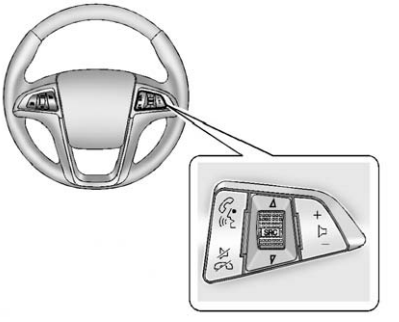
Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth system allows users with a Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to make and receive hands-free calls using the vehicle audio system and controls.

The Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired with the in-vehicle Bluetooth system before it can be used in the vehicle. Not all phones will support all functions.

See *Bluetooth (Overview) on page 7-57* or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) on page 7-59* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition) on page 7-63* or *Bluetooth (UHP Mexico Only) on page 7-69*.

Steering Wheel Controls



For vehicles with audio steering wheel controls, some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

/ : Press to interact with the available Bluetooth, OnStar, or navigation system.

/ : Press to silence the vehicle speakers only. Press again to turn the sound on. For vehicles with OnStar or Bluetooth systems, press to reject an incoming call, or to end a current call.

△ SRC ▽ : Turn △ or ▽ to select a radio band or audio source.

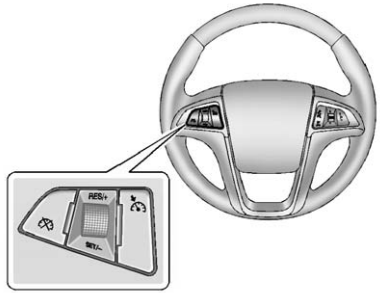
Turn △ or ▽ to select the next or previous favorite radio station, CD, or MP3 track.

Press SRC to change between radio and CD or DVD.

+ ▷ −: Press + to increase or − to decrease the volume.

For more information, see *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2*.

Cruise Control



⏲ : Press to turn the cruise control system on and off.

⏲ : Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

RES/+: Move the thumbwheel up to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed or to accelerate.

SET/− : Move the thumbwheel down toward SET/- to set a speed and activate cruise control, or to make the vehicle decelerate.

See *Cruise Control on page 9-42*.

Navigation System

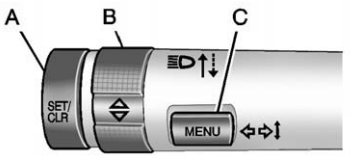
If the vehicle has a navigation system, there is a separate navigation system manual that includes information on the radio, audio players, and navigation system.

The navigation system provides detailed maps of most major freeways and roads. After a destination has been set, the system provides turn-by-turn instructions for reaching the destination. In addition, the system can help locate a variety of points of interest (POIs), such as banks, airports, restaurants, and more.

See the navigation system manual for more information.

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC display is located in the center of the instrument panel cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems. The controls for the DIC are located on the turn signal lever.



A. **SET/CLR:** Press to set or clear the menu item when it is displayed.

B. △ / ▽ **:** Use the thumbwheel to scroll through the items in each menu.

C. **MENU:** Press to display the Trip/Fuel Menu and the Vehicle Information Menu. This button is also used to return to or exit the last screen displayed on the DIC.

For more information, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27*.

Vehicle Personalization

Some vehicle features can be programmed by using the audio system controls. These features include:

- Climate and Air Quality
- Comfort and Convenience
- Collision/Detection Systems
- Language
- Lighting
- Power Door Locks
- Remote Lock/Unlock
- Return to Factory Settings

See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Ultrasonic Parking Assist

If available, Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system uses sensors on the rear bumper to assist with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). It operates at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph). URPA uses audible beeps to provide distance and system information.

Keep the sensors on the vehicle's rear bumper clean to ensure proper operation.

See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-44* for more information.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

There are two accessory power outlets. One is located under the armrest inside the center console storage and the other is on the rear of the center floor console.

Open the protective cover to use the accessory power outlet.

See *Power Outlets on page 5-7*.

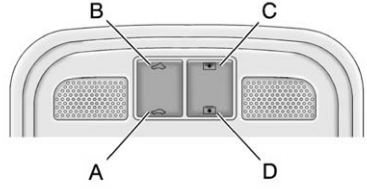
Universal Remote System

This system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Universal Remote System. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you with programming the Universal Remote System.

See *Universal Remote System on page 5-49*.

Sunroof



On vehicles with a sunroof, the switches are located on the overhead console.

The ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY, or in Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-27*.

Vent: Press the rear of the switch (B) to the first detent to vent the sunroof. Press the front of the switch (A) to the second detent to close the sunroof.

Express-open/Express-close: To express-open the sunroof, fully press and release the rear of the switch (B). To express-close, fully press and release the front of the switch (A). To stop the sunroof partway, press either switch a second time.

The sunshade opens automatically with the sunroof.

To express-open the sunshade, fully press and release the rear of the switch (C). To stop the sunshade partway, press the switch a second time. To express-close, fully press and release the front of the switch (D). To stop the sunshade partway, press the switch a second time.

See *Sunroof on page 2-22*.

eAssist Features

eAssist® Overview

If the vehicle has eAssist, there are several additional features which contribute to increased efficiency.

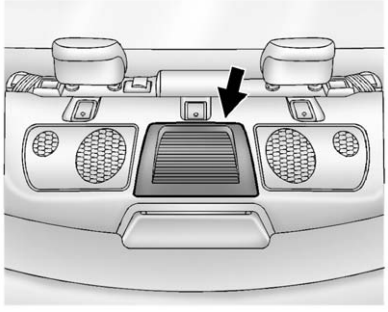
Vehicles with eAssist have an automatic engine start/stop feature. This feature saves fuel by shutting the engine off when the vehicle is stopped. When the engine shuts off automatically, all the accessories will continue to operate normally. In very hot or cold conditions, the engine will only shut off automatically part of the time. See *Starting the Engine on page 9-22*.

There are two air conditioning settings available. The comfort setting maximizes cabin comfort. The eco setting maximizes efficiency allowing more frequent, and longer engine stops than the comfort setting. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5*.

This vehicle has a Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a grade. See *Hill Start Assist (HSA) on page 9-38*.

Vehicles with eAssist have a slightly different instrument cluster, which includes an efficiency gauge, and an AUTO STOP indicator on the tachometer. See *Instrument Cluster on page 5-10*. There is also a Power Flow Gauge in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27*.

The eAssist system uses a high voltage battery, which is cooled with air drawn from the vehicle interior.



The cold air intake for the battery is located behind the rear seat, on the filler panel. Do not cover the intake. See *Battery on page 10-25*.

High Voltage Safety Information

eAssist vehicles have a standard 12-volt battery and a high voltage battery. Only a trained service technician with the proper knowledge and tools should inspect, test, or replace the high voltage battery. See your dealer if the high voltage battery needs service.

The negative 12-volt battery cable and the high voltage cable in the engine compartment are clearly labeled. In emergency situations, first responders can cut those cables to disable the high voltage battery system.

Driver Efficiency Gauge

This gauge assists the driver in operating the vehicle more efficiently and will vary based on driver input.

See *Driver Efficiency Gauge on page 5-13* for more information.

Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature

Vehicles with eAssist have an automatic engine start/stop feature. After the engine is started and has reached operating temperature, the auto stop feature may cause the engine to turn off when the brake pedal is applied and the vehicle comes to a complete stop. When the brake pedal is released, or the accelerator pedal is applied, the engine will restart. The engine will continue to run until the next auto stop.

To restart the engine during the auto stop, release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal. The engine starts immediately. The vehicle continues to run until the next stop.

AUTO STOP on the tachometer signifies that the engine is in auto stop mode. See *Tachometer on page 5-12* for more information.
A chime will sound when the driver door is opened while in auto stop mode. Remember to shift to P (Park) and turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF before exiting the vehicle.

See *Starting the Engine on page 9-22*.

Regenerative Braking

Regenerative braking takes some of the energy from the moving vehicle and turns it into electrical energy. This energy is then stored in the vehicle's high voltage battery system, contributing to increased fuel efficiency.

The system works whenever the accelerator pedal is released, and increases the energy captured as more brake pedal is applied.

Battery

This vehicle has a standard 12-volt battery. Refer to the replacement number on the original battery label when a new standard 12-volt battery is needed.

eAssist vehicles also have a high voltage battery. Only a trained service technician with the proper knowledge and tools should inspect, test, or replace the high voltage battery. See your dealer if the high voltage battery needs service. See *Battery on page 10-25*.

Service

Never try to do your own service on eAssist components. You can be injured and the vehicle can be damaged if you try to do your own service work. Service and repair of these high voltage components should only be performed by a trained service technician with the proper knowledge and tools. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 10-4*.

Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control System (TCS)

The traction control system limits wheel spin. The system turns on automatically every time the vehicle is started.

- To turn off traction control, press and release the Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak button located on the console to the right of the shift lever. illuminates and the appropriate DIC message is displayed. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-40*.
- Press and release the TCS/ StabiliTrak button again to turn on traction control.

For more information, see *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-38*.

StabiliTrak® System

The StabliTrak system assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. The system turns on automatically every time the vehicle is started.

- To turn off both TCS and StabiliTrak, press and hold the TCS/StabiliTrak button, located on the console to the right of the shift lever, until and OFF illuminate and the appropriate DIC message is displayed. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-40*.
- Press and release the TCS/ StabiliTrak button to turn on both systems.

For more information, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-40*.

Tire Pressure Monitor

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).

The TPMS warning light alerts you to a significant loss in pressure of one of the vehicle's tires. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*. The warning light will remain on until the tire pressure is corrected.

During cooler conditions, the low tire pressure warning light may appear when the vehicle is first started and then turn off. This may be an early indicator that the tire pressures are getting low and the tires need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

The TPMS does not replace normal monthly tire maintenance. It is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressures.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 10-56*.

Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

This vehicle may come with a spare tire and tire changing equipment or a tire sealant and compressor kit. The kit can be used to temporarily seal small punctures in the tread area of the tire.

See *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Relief Button) on page 10-71* or *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Deflation Button) on page 10-78* for complete operating information.

If the vehicle came with a spare tire and tire changing equipment, see *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-69*.

Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and displays the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message when it is time to change the engine oil and filter. The oil life system should be reset to 100% only following an oil change.

Resetting the Oil Life System

1. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
2. Press the DIC MENU button on the turn signal lever to enter the Vehicle Information Menu. Use the thumbwheel to scroll through the menu items until you reach REMAINING OIL LIFE.
3. Press the SET/CLR button to reset the oil life at 100%.
4. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*.

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Roadside Assistance Program

U.S.: **1-800-252-1112**

TTY Users (U.S.): **1-888-889-2438**

Canada: **1-800-268-6800**

Mexico: **01-800-466-0818**

As the owner of a new Buick, you are automatically enrolled in the Roadside Assistance program.

See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10* for more information.

Roadside Service and OnStar (U.S. and Canada)

If you have an active OnStar subscription, press the button and the current GPS location will be sent to an OnStar Advisor who will assess your problem, contact Roadside Assistance, and relay your exact location to get the help you need.

Online Owner Center (U.S. and Canada)

The Online Owner Center is a complimentary service that includes online service reminders, vehicle maintenance tips, online owner manual, special privileges, and more.

Sign up today at: **U.S.: buick.com (Click on "Owners," then "Manage My Buick/Owners Login")**

Canada: buickowner.ca

OnStar®

If equipped, this vehicle has a comprehensive, in-vehicle system that can connect to a live Advisor for Emergency, Security, Navigation, Connection, and Diagnostic Services. See *OnStar Overview on page 14-1* for more information.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 2-2
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-3
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-4
Remote Vehicle Start 2-9
Door Locks 2-11
Power Door Locks 2-12
Delayed Locking 2-12
Safety Locks 2-12

Doors
Trunk 2-13

Vehicle Security
Vehicle Security 2-14
Anti-theft Alarm System 2-14
Immobilizer 2-15
Immobilizer Operation (Key Access) 2-15
Immobilizer Operation (Keyless Access) 2-16

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 2-17
Power Mirrors 2-17
Folding Mirrors 2-17
Heated Mirrors 2-18
Park Tilt Mirrors 2-18

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rearview Mirror 2-18
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 2-19

Windows
Windows 2-19
Power Windows 2-20
Sun Visors 2-21
Rear Window Sunshade 2-21

Roof
Sunroof 2-22

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ WARNING

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. Children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.

⚠ WARNING

Leaving children in a vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous for many reasons; children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the RKE transmitter in a vehicle with children.

The key that is part of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter can be used for the ignition and all locks if the vehicle is a key access vehicle. If the vehicle has the keyless ignition, the key can be used for the locks.

Press the button on the RKE transmitter to extend the key. Press the button and the key blade to retract the key.

See your dealer if a new key is needed.

Notice: **If the keys get locked in the vehicle, it may have to be damaged to get them out. Always carry a spare key.**

If locked out of the vehicle, see *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.

With an active OnStar subscription, an OnStar Advisor may remotely unlock the vehicle. See *OnStar Overview on page 14-1*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-22* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The transmitter functions will work up to 20 m (65 ft) away from the vehicle. On vehicles with remote start the distance will be greater.

Keep in mind that other conditions, such as those previously stated, can impact the performance of the transmitter.

RKE without Remote Start Shown

(Lock): Press to lock all doors.

The turn signal indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound to indicate locking, see “Locking Feedback” under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

If the driver door is open when is pressed, all doors lock except the driver door, if enabled through the vehicle personalization.

If the passenger door is open when is pressed, all doors lock.

Pressing may also arm the theft-deterrent system. See *Anti-theft Alarm System on page 2-14*.

(Unlock): Press to unlock the driver door or all doors. See “Door Unlock Options” under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

The turn signal indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound to indicate unlocking. See “Unlock Feedback” under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Pressing will disarm the theft-deterrent system. See *Anti-theft Alarm System on page 2-14*.

Memory seat positions may be recalled when unlocking the vehicle. See “Memory Seats” under *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* and “Remote Recall” under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information.

(Remote Trunk Release): Press and hold to unlock the trunk.

(Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm): Press and release one time to locate the vehicle. The exterior lamps flash and the horn chirps.

Press and hold for at least two seconds to sound the panic alarm. The horn sounds and the turn signals flash until is pressed again or the vehicle is started.

(Remote Vehicle Start): For vehicles with this feature, press to operate the remote start feature. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-9* for additional information.

The buttons on the keys are disabled when there is a key in the ignition, if equipped.

Keyless Access Operation

Some vehicles have a keyless access system that lets you lock and unlock the doors and access the trunk without removing the RKE transmitter from your pocket, purse, briefcase, etc. The RKE transmitter should be within 1 m (3 ft) of the door or trunk being opened.

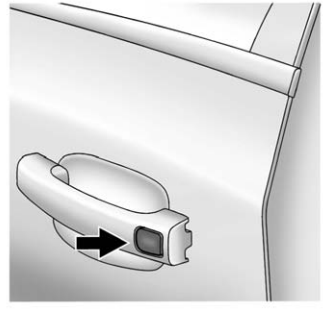
Keyless Unlocking

With the RKE transmitter within 1 m (3 ft), approach the front door and pull the handle to unlock and open the door. If the transmitter is recognized, the door will unlock and open.

Entering any door other than the driver door will always cause all of the doors to unlock. This is not customizable.

To customize which doors unlock when the driver door is opened, see “Door Unlock Options” under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Lock Sensor



When all doors are closed and the ignition is off, the vehicle can be locked by pressing this area on the door handle. This feature will be available for several minutes after the vehicle has been turned off.

Keyless Trunk Opening

Lift up on the touch pad located above the license plate to open the trunk if the RKE transmitter is within range.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. The vehicle can be reprogrammed so that lost or stolen transmitters no longer work. Any remaining transmitters will need to be reprogrammed. Each vehicle can have up to five transmitters matched to it.

Programming with a Recognized Transmitter (Keyless Access Vehicles Only)

A new transmitter can be programmed to the vehicle when there is one recognized transmitter. To program, the vehicle must be off and all of the transmitters, both currently recognized and new, must be with you.

1. Place the recognized transmitter(s) in the cupholder.
2. Insert the vehicle key of the new transmitter into the key lock cylinder located on the outside of the driver door and turn the key to the unlock position five times within 10 seconds.

   The Driver Information Center (DIC) displays READY FOR REMOTE #2, 3, 4 or 5.
3. Place the new transmitter into the transmitter pocket. The transmitter pocket is located inside the center console storage area under the cupholder. The cupholder will need to be pulled out to access the transmitter pocket.
4. Press the ignition. When the transmitter is learned, the DIC will show that it is ready to program the next transmitter.
5. Remove the transmitter from the transmitter pocket and press 🔓.

   To program additional transmitters, repeat Steps 3 through 5.

   When all additional transmitters are programmed, press and hold the ignition for 10 seconds to exit programming mode.

Programming without a Recognized Transmitter (Keyless Access Vehicles Only)

If there are no currently recognized transmitters available, follow this procedure to program up to five transmitters. This feature is not available in Canada. This procedure will take approximately 30 minutes to complete. The vehicle must be off and all of the transmitters you wish to program must be with you.

1. Insert the vehicle key of the transmitter into the key lock cylinder located on the outside of the driver door and turn the key to the unlock position five times within 10 seconds.

   The Driver Information Center (DIC) displays REMOTE LEARN PENDING, PLEASE WAIT.

2. Wait for 10 minutes until the DIC displays PRESS ENGINE START BUTTON TO LEARN and then press the ignition.

   The DIC displays will again show REMOTE LEARN PENDING, PLEASE WAIT.

3. Repeat Step 2 two additional times. After the third time, all previously known transmitters will no longer work with the vehicle. Remaining transmitters can be relearned during the next steps.

   The DIC display should now show READY FOR REMOTE # 1.

4. Place the new transmitter into the transmitter pocket. The transmitter pocket is located inside the center console storage area under the cupholder. The cupholder will need to be pulled out to access the transmitter pocket.

5. Press the ignition. When the transmitter is learned the DIC will show that it is ready to program the next transmitter.

6. Remove the transmitter from the transmitter pocket and press 🔓.

   To program additional transmitters, repeat Steps 4 through 6.

   When all additional transmitters are programmed, press and hold the ignition for 10 seconds to exit programming mode.

Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery

If the transmitter battery is weak, the DIC may display NO REMOTE DETECTED when you try to start the vehicle. The REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message may also be displayed at this time.

To start the vehicle:

1. Remove the cupholder from the center console storage area.
2. Place the transmitter in the transmitter pocket with the buttons facing up.
3. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button. See *Starting the Engine on page 9-22* for additional information about the vehicle's keyless ignition with pushbutton start.

   Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC. See “REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY” under *Key and Lock Messages on page 5-39*.

The battery is not rechargeable. To replace the battery:

1. Push the button on the transmitter to extend the key.
2. Remove the battery cover by prying it with a finger.
3. Remove the battery by pushing on the battery and sliding it toward the key blade.
4. Insert the new battery, positive side facing up. Push the battery down until it is held in place. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Snap the battery cover back on to the transmitter.

Remote Vehicle Start

If available, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

The button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

Laws in some local communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view. Check local regulations for any requirements.

Starting the Engine Using Remote Start

To start the engine using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing Step 2, press and hold until the turn signal lamps flash, or for about two seconds if the vehicle is not in view.

   When the engine starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

Turn the ignition to ON/RUN (key access), or select the ON/RUN/START ignition position (keyless access), to drive the vehicle.

The engine will shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension is done or the ignition is put in ON/RUN (key access) or ON/RUN/START (keyless access).

When the vehicle is started remotely, the climate control remote start. system will use the last setting before the vehicle was shut off. See “Remote Start Climate Control Operation” in *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5*. Vehicles with heated or heated and ventilated front seats can have this feature turn on automatically during a remote start. See “Remote Start Heated Seats” and “Remote Start Cooled Seats” under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information.

Extending Engine Run Time

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10-minute time extension. Remote start can only be extended once.

When remote start is extended, the second 10 minutes will start immediately.

For example, if the vehicle has been running for five minutes, and 10 minutes are added, the engine will run for a total of 15 minutes.

A maximum of two remote starts or remote start attempts are allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote start procedure can be used again.

Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold ⟲ until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote start will not operate if:

- The key is in the ignition (key access) or the ignition is in any position other than OFF (keyless access).
- The transmitter is in the vehicle (keyless access).
- The hood is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- There is an emission control system malfunction.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

Door Locks

⚠ WARNING

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when slowing or stopping the vehicle. Lock the doors to help prevent this from happening.

To lock and unlock the doors from the outside, use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or the key.

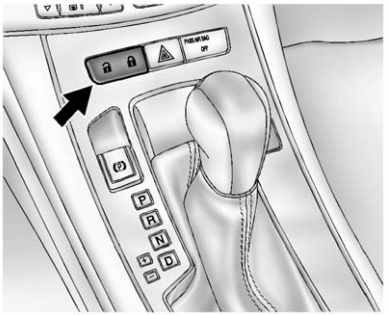
To lock the doors from inside, use the power door lock switch or door lock knob. To unlock the doors, use the power door lock switch or pull once on the door handle to unlock it, and a second time to open it.

Manually locking the driver door also automatically locks all other doors.

For more information see:

- *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4*.
- *Power Door Locks on page 2-12*.
- *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Power Door Locks



(Unlock): Press to unlock all doors.

(Lock): Press to lock all doors.

See “Power Door Locks” in *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Delayed Locking

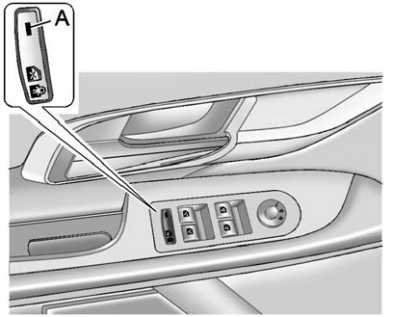
When locking the doors with the power lock switch and a door is open, the doors will lock five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use.

Pressing the power lock switch twice or the lock button on the RKE transmitter twice will override the delayed locking feature and immediately lock all the doors.

This feature will not operate if the key is in the ignition.

This feature can be programmed by using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See “Delayed Door Lock” under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Safety Locks



Press to activate the safety locks on the rear doors. The LED (A) comes on when activated.

The rear door power windows are also disabled.

Press again to deactivate the lockout switch.

If the light flashes, the feature may not be working properly.

Doors

Trunk

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate, trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or liftgate. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate, or trunk/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.

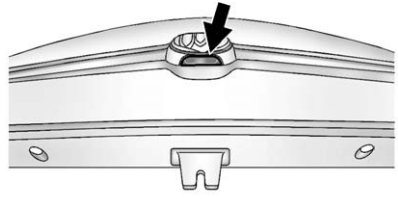
(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.
- If the vehicle has a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-30*.

Remote Trunk Release



To open the trunk from outside the vehicle, press on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, or press the touch pad above the license plate.

Emergency Trunk Release Handle

Notice: **Do not use the emergency trunk release handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the trunk as it could damage the handle. The emergency trunk release handle is only intended to aid a person trapped in a latched trunk, enabling them to open the trunk from the inside.**

There is an emergency trunk release handle located inside the trunk on the trunk latch. On some vehicles, the release handle can be accessed by folding the rear seat center seatback. See *Rear Seats on page 3-11*. Pull the release handle to open the trunk from the inside.

Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make it impossible to steal.

Anti-theft Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.

Arming the System

To arm the system, press 🔒 on the RKE transmitter.

The alarm automatically arms after about 30 seconds. The security light, located on the instrument panel, flashes.

Press 🚗 on the RKE transmitter to open the trunk without setting off the alarm. The system rearms when the trunk is closed.

Disarming the System

To disarm the system, do one of the following:

- Press 🔓 on the RKE transmitter.
- Approach the vehicle with the RKE transmitter (keyless access).
- Start the engine.

The alarm automatically disarms.

How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If 🔓 is pressed and the horn sounds, an attempted break-in occurred while the system was armed.

If the alarm has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC. See *Anti-theft Alarm System Messages on page 5-41* for additional information.

Immobilizer

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-22* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

Immobilizer Operation (Key Access)

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilized when the key is removed from the ignition.

The system is automatically disarmed when the vehicle is started with the correct key. The key uses a transponder that matches an immobilizer control unit in the vehicle and automatically disarms the system. Only the correct key starts the vehicle. The vehicle may not start if the key is damaged.

The security light, located in the instrument panel cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged or the light continues to stay on, try another ignition key.

If the engine still does not start with the other key, the vehicle needs service. If the vehicle does start, the first key may be damaged. See your dealer who can service the theft-deterrent system and have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

Immobilizer Operation (Keyless Access)

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilized when the transmitter leaves the vehicle.

The immobilization system is disarmed when the ignition button is pushed in and a valid transmitter is found in the vehicle.

The security light, located in the instrument panel cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The system has one or more transmitters matched to an immobilizer control unit in your vehicle. Only a correctly matched transmitter will start the vehicle. If the transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the RKE transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another transmitter. Or, you may try placing the transmitter in the transmitter pocket located in the center console. See “No Remote Detected” under *Key and Lock Messages on page 5-39*.

If the engine does not start with the other transmitter or when the transmitter is in the pocket in the center console, your vehicle needs service. See your dealer who can service the theft-deterrent system and have a new transmitter programmed to the vehicle.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

⚠ WARNING

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

Power Mirrors

To adjust the mirrors:

1. Turn the control knob to the L (left) or R (right) selecting the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Push the control knob to the left, right, up, or down to adjust the mirror.

Vehicles with the memory feature can store a preferred mirror position. See “Memory Seats” under *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

Folding Mirrors

Manual Foldaway Mirrors

These mirrors can be folded inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, pull the mirror toward the vehicle. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

Automatic Dimming Feature

The vehicle may have a driver outside mirror that automatically adjusts for the glare of the headlamps behind you.

Turn Signal Indicator

The vehicle may have a turn signal indicator lamp built into the mirror housing. The turn signal lamp flashes with the use of the vehicle's turn signal and hazard flashers.

Heated Mirrors

For vehicles with heated mirrors:

(Rear Window Defogger): Press to heat the mirrors.

See “Rear Window Defogger” under *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1* for more information.

Park Tilt Mirrors

If the vehicle is equipped with memory mirrors, there is an option to have the mirrors tilt down, when in R (Reverse), to more easily see the ground near the vehicle.

When the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse), both the driver and passenger mirrors will tilt downward. They will return to their previous position when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), the ignition is turned to OFF, or the vehicle is left in R (Reverse) for an extended period of time.

This feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

Adjust the inside rearview mirror for a clear view of the area behind your vehicle. To avoid glare of the headlamps from behind, push the tab forward for daytime and pull it for nighttime use.

Vehicles with OnStar have three control buttons at the bottom of the mirror. See your dealer for more information about OnStar and how to subscribe to it. See *OnStar Overview on page 14-1*.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

On vehicles with an automatic dimming inside rearview mirror the automatic dimming reduces the glare from the headlamps of the vehicle behind you.

Vehicles with OnStar have three control buttons located at the bottom of the mirror. See your dealer for more information about OnStar and how to subscribe to it. See *OnStar Overview on page 14-1*.

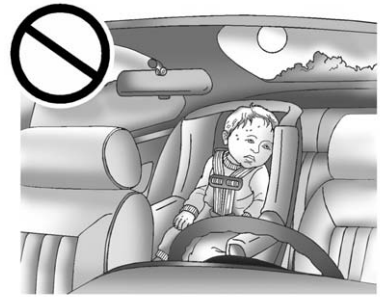
Cleaning the Mirror

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Windows

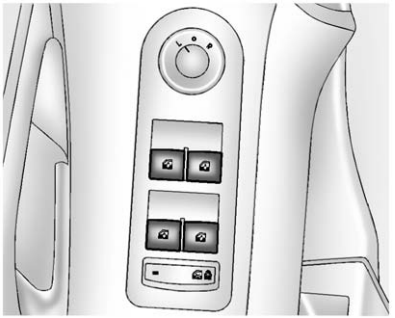
⚠ WARNING

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.



The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when a window is partially open. To reduce the sound, open another window or the sunroof (if equipped).

Power Windows



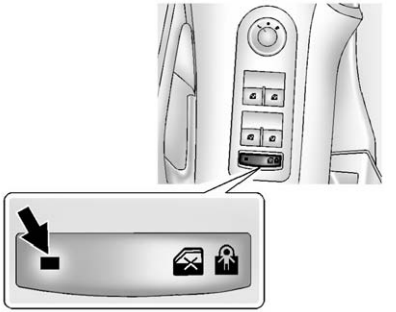
Press the switch to lower the window. Pull the switch up to raise it.

The switches work when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY, or in Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-27*.

Express Window Operation

Windows with an express-up or down feature allow the front windows to be lowered or raised without holding the switch. Rear windows only have express-down. Pull a window switch up or push it down all the way, release it, and the window goes down or up automatically. Stop the window by pushing or pulling the switch.

Rear Window Lockout



This feature prevents the rear passenger windows from operating, except from the driver position.

Press to activate the rear window lockout switch. The LED (A) comes on when activated.

The rear door locks are also disabled. See *Safety Locks on page 2-12*.

Press again to deactivate the lockout switch.

Programming the Power Windows

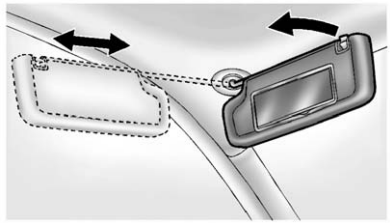
If the battery on the vehicle has been recharged, disconnected, or is not working, you will need to reprogram each front power window for the express-up feature to work. Before reprogramming, replace or recharge the vehicle's battery.

To program each front window:

1. With the ignition in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY, or in Retained Accessory Power (RAP), close all doors.
2. Press and hold the power window switch until the window is fully open.
3. Pull the power window switch up until the window is fully closed.
4. Continue holding the switch up for approximately two seconds after the window is completely closed.

The window is now reprogrammed. Repeat the process for the other windows.

Sun Visors



Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Detach the sun visor from the center mount to pivot to the side window, or to extend along the rod, if available.

Rear Window Sunshade

On vehicles with a rear window sunshade, the switch is on the console to the right of the shift lever.

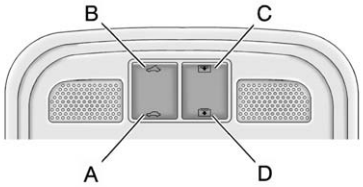
The sunshade only operates when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY.

To open the sunshade, press and release the switch. The sunshade will fully extend. To close the sunshade, press and release the switch again. The sunshade will fully close.

If the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse) when the sunshade is extended, it will automatically close.

Roof

Sunroof



On vehicles with a sunroof, the switch is located on the overhead console.

The sunroof only operates when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY, or in Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-27*.

Vent

The sunroof has an express-vent open feature. From the closed position, press the rear of the sunroof switch (B) to the first detent to vent the sunroof. To close the sunroof, press the front of the sunroof switch (A) to the second detent.

Express-Open/Express-Close

To express-open the sunroof from the closed or vent position, fully press and release the rear of the switch (B). The sunroof opens automatically. To stop the sunroof partway, press the switch a second time. To express-close the sunroof, fully press and release the front of the switch (A). The sunroof closes automatically. To stop the sunroof partway, press the switch a second time.

If the sunshade is closed, it opens automatically with the sunroof but can also be express-opened/express-closed by using the sunshade control (C) or (D). The sunshade cannot be fully closed with the sunroof open.

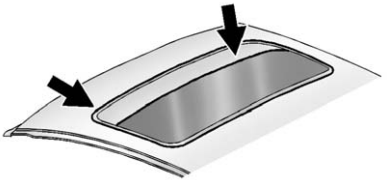
To express-open the sunshade from the closed position, fully press and release the rear of the switch (C). The sunshade opens automatically. To stop the sunshade partway, press the switch a second time. To express-close the sunshade fully press and release the front of the switch (D). The sunshade closes automatically. To stop the sunshade partway, press the switch a second time.

Notice: **Forcing the sunshade forward of the sliding glass panel may cause damage and the sunroof may not operate properly. Always close the glass panel before closing the sunshade.**

The sunroof glass panel cannot be opened or closed if the vehicle has an electrical failure.

Anti-Pinch Feature

If an object is in the path of the sunroof while it is closing, the anti-pinch feature will detect the object and stop the sunroof from closing at the point of the obstruction. The sunroof and sunshade will then return to the open or vent position. To close the sunroof once the obstruction has been removed, refer to "Express-Open/Express-Close" earlier in this section.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause issues with sunroof operation and noise. It could also plug the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

✍ NOTES

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 3-2

Front Seats
Seat Adjustment 3-4
Power Seat Adjustment 3-5
Lumbar Adjustment 3-5
Reclining Seatbacks 3-6
Memory Seats 3-8
Heated and Ventilated Front Seats 3-10

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 3-11

Safety Belts
Safety Belts 3-13
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 3-14
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-15
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 3-20
Safety Belt Extender 3-20
Safety System Check 3-20
Safety Belt Care 3-21
Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash 3-21

Airbag System
Airbag System 3-22
Where Are the Airbags? 3-24
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 3-25
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 3-26
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 3-27
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 3-27
Passenger Sensing System 3-29
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 3-33
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle . . . 3-34
Airbag System Check 3-35
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 3-35

Child Restraints
Older Children 3-36
Infants and Young Children 3-38
Child Restraint Systems 3-41
Where to Put the Restraint . . . 3-43
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 3-44
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash 3-52
Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat) 3-52
Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat) 3-55

Head Restraints

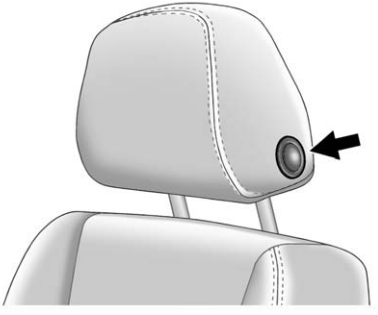
The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

⚠ WARNING

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Front Seat

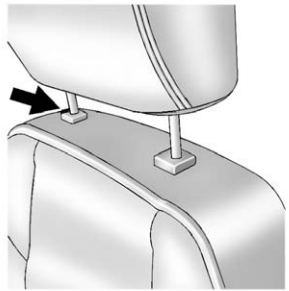


To raise or lower the head restraint, press the release button located on the side of the head restraint and pull up or push the head restraint down and release the button.

Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The front head restraints are not designed to be removed.

Rear Seat



Pull the head restraint up to raise it. To lower the head restraint, press the release button, located on the head restraint post on the top of the seatback, while you push the head restraint down.

Push down on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

If you are installing a child restraint in the rear seat, see “Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System” under *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44*.

Front Seats

Seat Adjustment

Seat Position

⚠ WARNING

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and

(Continued)

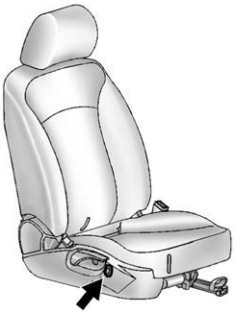
WARNING (Continued)

confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

To adjust the seat position:

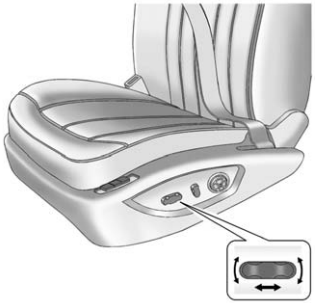
1. Pull the handle under the front of the seat cushion.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the handle.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

Height Adjustment



Press and hold the top or bottom of the switch to raise or lower the seat. Release the switch when the desired height is reached.

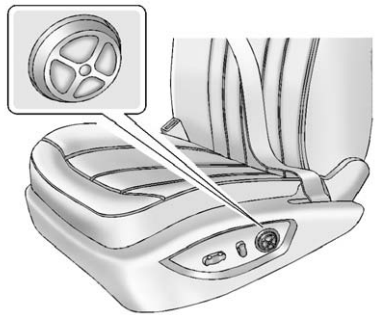
Power Seat Adjustment



To adjust a power seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front or rear part of the seat cushion by moving the front or rear of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire control up or down.

Lumbar Adjustment



If available, press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or decrease lumbar support.

To raise or lower lumbar support, press and hold the top or bottom of the control.

Release the control when the seatback reaches the desired level of lumbar support.

See *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ WARNING

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the safety belts cannot do their job when reclined like this.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

The shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash, the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the safety belt properly.

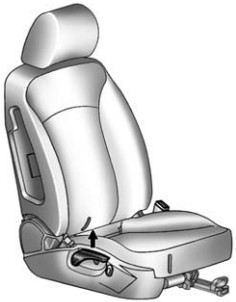
Manual Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ WARNING

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ WARNING

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.



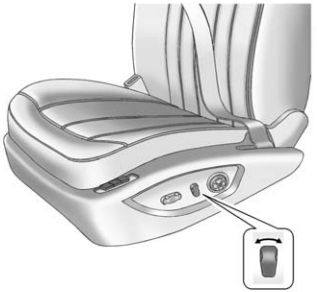
To recline the seatback:

1. Lift the recline lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

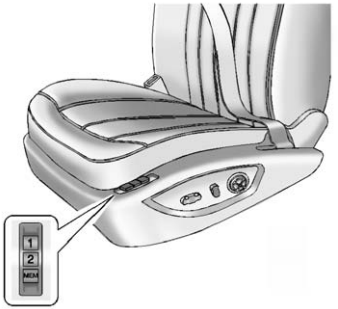
Power Reclining Seatbacks



To adjust a power seatback, if equipped:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

Memory Seats



On vehicles with the memory feature, the “1” and “2” buttons on the outboard side of the driver seat are used to manually save and recall the driver seat and outside mirror positions. These manually stored positions are referred to as Button Memory positions.

The vehicle will also automatically save driver seat and outside mirror positions to the current driver Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter when the ignition is placed in OFF. These automatically stored positions are referred to as RKE Memory positions. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4* for more information.

Storing Button Memory Positions

To save positions into Button Memory:

1. Adjust the driver seat, seatback recliner, and both outside mirrors to the desired driving positions.
2. Press and hold MEM (Memory) and “1” at the same time until a beep sounds.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for a second driver using “2.”

Recalling Button Memory Positions

To recall the manually saved Button Memory positions, press and hold “1” or “2.” The driver seat and outside mirrors move to the positions stored to those buttons when pressed. Releasing “1” or “2” before the stored positions are reached stops the recall.

If something has blocked the driver seat while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the appropriate manual control for the memory item that is not recalling for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again by pressing the appropriate memory button. If the memory position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

Recalling RKE Memory Positions (Memory Remote Recall)

The Memory Remote Recall feature can recall the driver seat and outside mirrors to previously stored RKE Memory positions when entering the vehicle.

Every time the ignition is placed in OFF, the positions of the driver seat and outside mirrors are automatically stored to the RKE transmitter that was used to start the vehicle. These positions are called RKE Memory positions and may be different than the previously mentioned Button Memory positions saved to the “1” or “2” buttons. To automatically recall RKE Memory positions, unlock the driver door with the RKE transmitter, and open the driver door. On vehicles with Keyless Access, opening the driver door when an RKE transmitter is present will activate the RKE Memory recall. If the driver door is already open, pressing the RKE transmitter button will also activate the RKE Memory recall. The driver seat and outside mirrors will move to the previously saved RKE Memory positions.

This feature is turned on or off using the vehicle personalization menu. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information.

To stop recall movement, press one of the memory, power mirror, or power seat controls.

If something has blocked the driver seat while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the appropriate manual control for the memory item that is not recalling for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again by opening the driver door and pressing the RKE transmitter button. If the memory position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

Easy Exit Driver Seat

This feature moves the seat rearward allowing the driver more room to exit the vehicle.

To activate, place the ignition in OFF and open the driver door. If the driver door is already open, placing the ignition in OFF will activate the easy exit driver seat.

This feature is turned on or off using the vehicle personalization menu. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information.

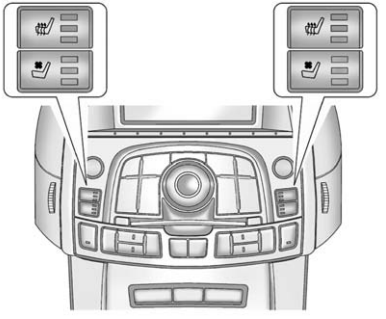
To stop recall movement, press one of the memory or power seat controls.

If something has blocked the driver seat while recalling the exit position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the power seat control rearward for two seconds. Try recalling the exit position again. If the exit position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

Heated and Ventilated Front Seats

⚠ WARNING

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.



Heated and Ventilated Seat Buttons Shown, Heated Seat Buttons Similar

If available, the buttons are on the climate control panel. To operate, the ignition must be on.

Press to heat the seat cushion and seatback or , if equipped, to ventilate the seat.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

Remote Start Heated and Ventilated Seats

During a remote start, the heated or ventilated seats, if equipped, can be turned on automatically. They are canceled when the ignition is turned on. Press the button to use the heated or ventilated seats after the vehicle is started.

The heated or ventilated seat indicator lights on the button do not turn on during a remote start.

The heated seat temperature performance of an unoccupied seat may be reduced. This is normal.

The heated or ventilated seats will not turn on during a remote start unless they are enabled in the vehicle personalization menu. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-9* and *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information.

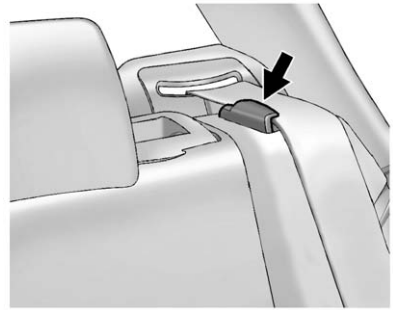
Rear Seats

Folding the Seatback

Either side of the seatback can be folded down for more cargo space. Fold a seatback only when the vehicle is not moving.

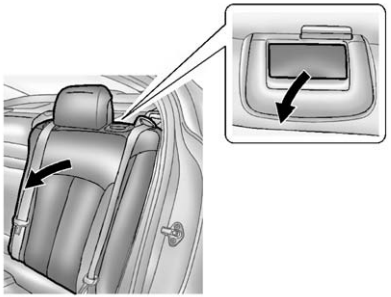
Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**

To fold the seatback down:



Rear Seat with Safety Belt Retainer Clip Shown

1. Before folding the seatback, make sure the safety belt is in the retainer clip (if equipped).



Rear Seat with Safety Belt Guide Loop Shown

2. Pull on the lever on the top of the seatback to unlock it.

   A tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.

3. Fold the seatback down.

   Repeat the steps to fold the other seatback, if desired.

Raising the Seatback

⚠ WARNING

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ WARNING

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise a seatback:

1. Lift the seatback up and push it rearward to lock it in place. Make sure the safety belt is in the retainer clip (if equipped) and is not twisted or caught in the seatback.

   A tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.

2. Push and pull the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.

3. Repeat the steps to raise the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Safety Belts

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, injuries can be much worse than if you are wearing safety belts. You can be seriously injured or killed by hitting things inside the vehicle harder or by being ejected from the vehicle. In addition, anyone who is not buckled up can strike other passengers in the vehicle.

(Continued)

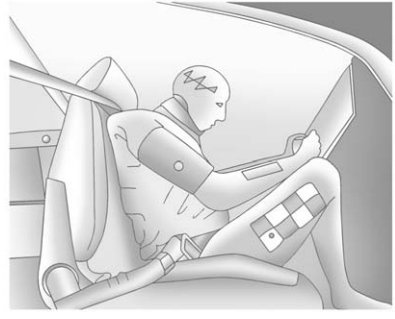
WARNING (Continued)

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, passengers riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow passengers to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts.

Always wear a safety belt, and check that all passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 5-15* for additional information.

Why Safety Belts Work



When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windshield, the instrument panel, or the safety belts!

When you wear a safety belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the safety belts. That is why wearing safety belts makes such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. Your chance of being conscious during and after a crash, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection.

Also, in nearly all states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing safety belts.

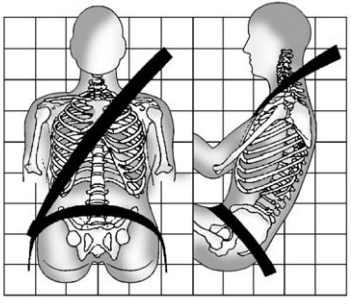
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

There are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 3-36* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-38*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a safety belt properly.



- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you.
- Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.
- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your safety belt properly.

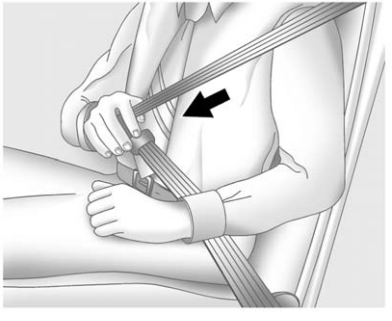
- Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.
- Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

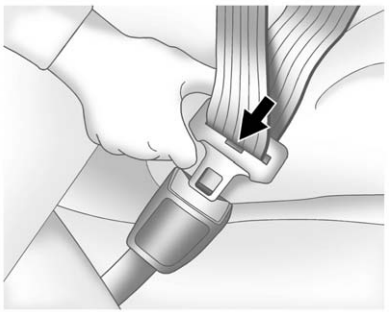
1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.



2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

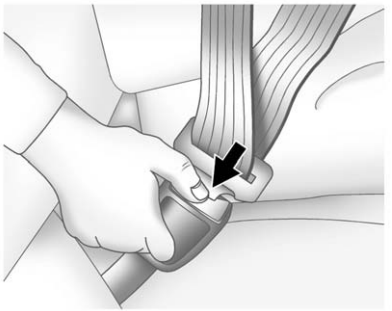
   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 3-20*.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

   If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster” later in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.

4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.



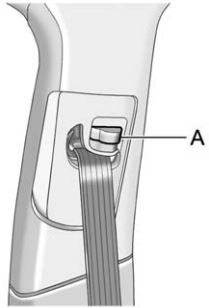
To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position. Slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing, when the safety belt is not in use. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the guide loop on the side wall.

Before a door is closed, be sure the safety belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the safety belt and the vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and right front passenger seating positions.

Adjust the height so the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash. See *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly on page 3-14*.



Press the release button (A) and move the height adjuster to the desired position. The adjuster can be moved up by pushing the slide/trim up. After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it down without pushing the release button to make sure it has locked into position.

Safety Belt Pretensioners

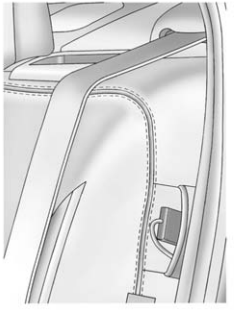
This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, the pretensioners and probably other parts of the vehicle's safety belt system will need to be replaced. See *Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash on page 3-21*.

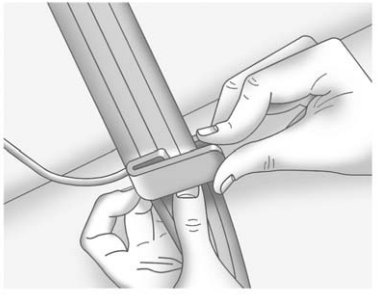
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

This vehicle may have rear shoulder belt comfort guides. If not, they are available through your dealer. The guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed and properly adjusted, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

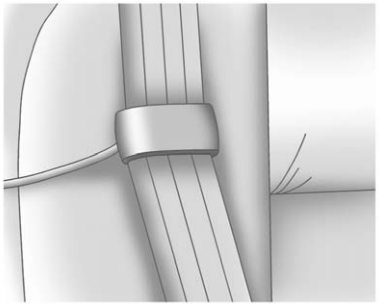
There is one guide for each outside passenger position in the rear seat. Here is how to install a comfort guide to the safety belt:



1. Remove the guide from its storage pocket on the side of the seat.



2. Place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

⚠ WARNING

A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.

A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Safety System Check

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 5-15* for more information.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Safety Belt Care on page 3-21*.

Safety Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ WARNING

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ WARNING

A crash can damage the safety belt system in the vehicle. A damaged safety belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the safety belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of safety belts may not be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-16*.

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the front outboard passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the front outboard passenger.

The vehicle may have the following airbags:

- Seat-mounted side impact airbags for the second row outboard passengers.

All of the airbags have the word AIRBAG embossed on the trim or on a label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the center of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front outboard passenger.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

For roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the ceiling or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ WARNING

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are the only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-25*.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce the chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. Everyone in the vehicle should wear a safety belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ WARNING

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear a safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

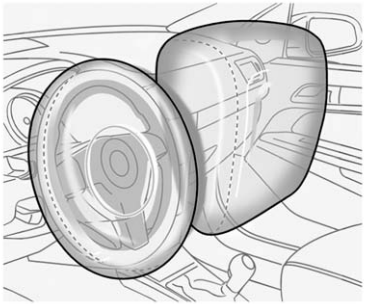
Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 3-36* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-38*.

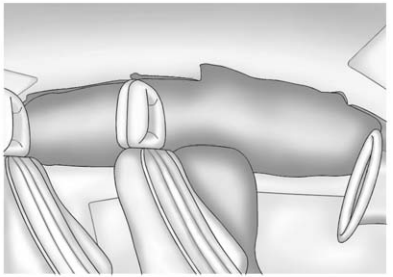
There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-16* for more information.

Where Are the Airbags?



The driver frontal airbag is in the center of the steering wheel.

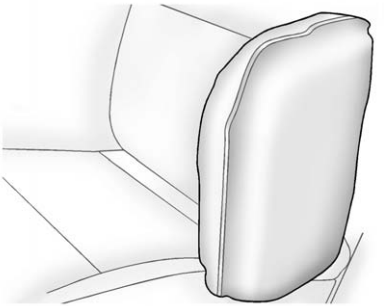
The front outboard passenger frontal airbag is in the passenger side instrument panel.



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

The driver and front outboard passenger seat-mounted side impact airbags are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, front outboard passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.



Rear Seat Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

On vehicles with second row seat-mounted side impact airbags, they are in the sides of the rear seatback closest to the door.

⚠ WARNING

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie-down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest. However, they are only designed to inflate if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is traveling. It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Thresholds can also vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has dual-stage frontal airbags. Dual-stage airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity.

The vehicle has electronic frontal sensors, which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate frontal impact and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, dual-stage airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

The vehicle has seat-mounted side impact airbags and roof-rail airbags. See *Airbag System on page 3-22*. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending on the location of the impact. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed threshold level. The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design.

Roof-rail airbags are not intended to inflate in rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is intended to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck. Both roof-rail airbags will inflate when either side of the vehicle is struck or if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over on its side, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or repair costs.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

For airbag location, see *Where Are the Airbags? on page 3-24*.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-25* for more information.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they inflate. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags? on page 3-24*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps, turn on the hazard warning flashers, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn off the interior lamps, and turn off

the hazard warning flashers by using the controls for those features.

⚠ WARNING

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the front outboard passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for the vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy on page 13-20* and *Event Data Recorders on page 13-20*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will light on the instrument panel when the vehicle is started.

The words ON and OFF will be visible during the system check. If you use remote start, if equipped, to start the vehicle from a distance you may not see the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or the word OFF will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-16*.

The passenger sensing system turns off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. No other airbag is affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front outboard passenger seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag should be allowed to inflate or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size.

We recommend that children be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag inflates.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

inflate under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag is off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag if:

- The front outboard passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A front outboard passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbags are off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-16*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on the front outboard passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front outboard passenger seat. When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbags to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbags are active.

For some children, including children in child restraints and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in the vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-16* for more information, including important safety information.

If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat) on page 3-52* or *Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat) on page 3-55*.
5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints on page 3-2*.
6. Restart the vehicle.

The passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the airbag for a child in a child restraint depending upon the child's seating posture and body build. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If the Off Indicator Is Lit for an Adult-Size Occupant

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the front outboard passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. Use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the front outboard passenger frontal airbag :

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Safety Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-34* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

A wet seat can affect the performance of the passenger sensing system. Here is how:

- The passenger sensing system may turn off the passenger frontal airbag when liquid is soaked into the seat. If this happens, the off indicator will be lit, and the airbag readiness light on the instrument panel will also be lit.
- Liquid pooled on the seat that has not soaked in may make it more likely that the passenger sensing system will turn on the passenger frontal airbag while a child restraint or child occupant is on the seat. If the passenger frontal airbag is turned on, the on indicator will be lit.

If the passenger seat gets wet, dry the seat immediately. If the airbag readiness light is lit, do not install a child restraint or allow anyone to occupy the seat. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-16* for important safety information.

The on indicator may be lit if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop or other electronic device, is put on an unoccupied seat. If this is not desired remove the object from the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Stowing of articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 13-18*.

⚠ WARNING

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, roof-rail airbag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring.

Your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, and airbag wiring.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery or trim, or with GM covers, upholstery or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-29*.

If your vehicle needs to be modified because you have a disability and you have questions about whether the modifications will affect the vehicle's airbag system, or if you have questions about whether the airbag system will be affected if the vehicle is modified for any other reason, call Customer Assistance. See *Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-5* or *Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) on page 13-5*.

Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-16* for more information.

Notice: **If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag covers, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags? on page 3-24*. See your dealer for service.**

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

⚠ WARNING

A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle.
A damaged airbag system may not work properly and may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

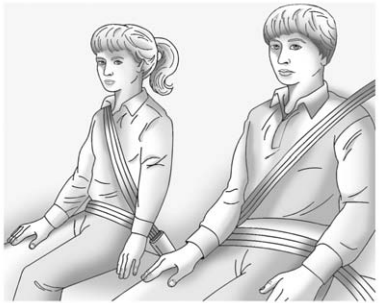
If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-16* for more information.

Vehicles with eAssist have a high voltage battery and a standard 12-volt battery. If an airbag inflates or the vehicle has been in a crash, the vehicle's sensing system may shut down the high voltage system. When this occurs, the high voltage battery is disconnected and the vehicle is not charging the 12-volt battery or the electrical system. The vehicle may start but it shuts down once the 12-volt battery is depleted. When the 12-volt battery is depleted, the vehicle will not start and the on-board jump start feature is disabled. The airbag readiness light and/or the 12-volt battery warning light are displayed. Before the vehicle can be operated again, it must be serviced at your dealer.

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat, state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the below fit test:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Never allow two children to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

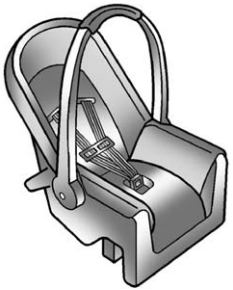
⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. This is because an infant's neck is not fully developed and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing child restraint settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

⚠ WARNING

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems



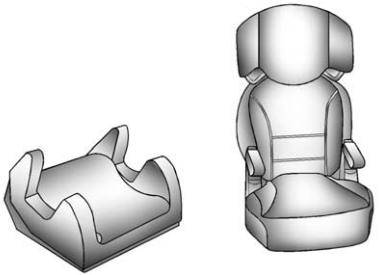
(A) Rear-Facing Infant Seat

A rear-facing infant seat (A) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.

(B) Forward-Facing Child Seat

A forward-facing child seat (B) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



(C) Booster Seats

A booster seat (C) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system.
A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ WARNING

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44* for more information. Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

In some areas, Certified Child Passenger Safety Technicians (CPSTs) are available to inspect and demonstrate how to correctly use and install child restraints. In the U.S., refer to the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) website to locate the nearest child safety seat inspection station. For CPST availability in Canada, check with Transport Canada or the Provincial Ministry of Transportation office.

Securing the Child within the Child Restraint

⚠ WARNING

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

We recommend that children and child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-29* for additional information.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Always make sure the child restraint is properly secured.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent safety belt assemblies or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the safety belt.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

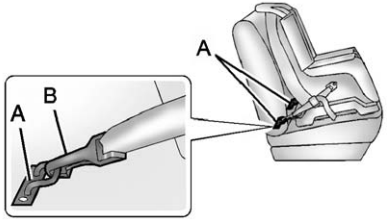
The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

In order to use the LATCH system in the vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in the vehicle.

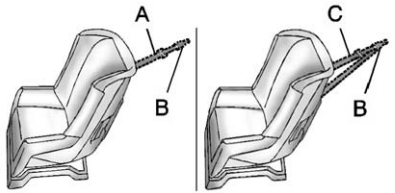
Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

Top Tether Anchor

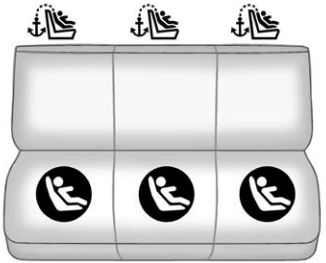


A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

The child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints that have a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the child restraint.

Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



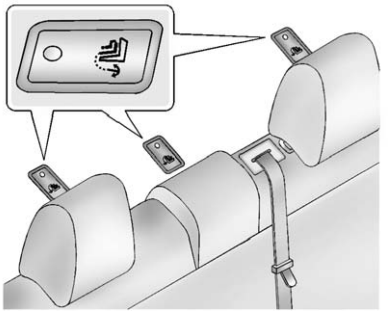
Rear Seat

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

To assist in locating the lower anchors, each rear anchor position has a label, near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.

To assist in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is on the cover.



The top tether anchors are under the covers, behind the rear seat, on the filler panel. Be sure to use an anchor on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-43* for additional information.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ WARNING

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a LATCH-type child restraint properly using the anchors, or use the vehicle safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ WARNING

Do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

⚠ WARNING

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

of the retractor to set the lock, if the vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

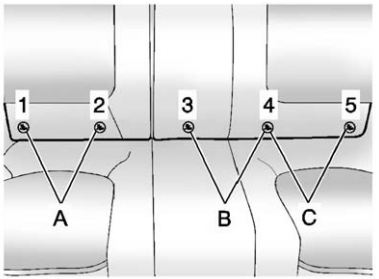
Notice: **Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's safety belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled safety belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.**

Do not fold the empty rear seat with a safety belt buckled. This could damage the safety belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the safety belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

If you need to secure more than one child restraint in the rear seat, see *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-43*.

You cannot secure three child restraints using the LATCH anchors in the rear seat at the same time, but you can install two of them. If you want to do this, install one LATCH child restraint in the passenger-side position, and install the other one either in the driver-side position or in the center position. If you need to install child restraints in both the center and driver-side position, the one in the center seating position will need to be secured using the vehicle safety belts instead of the LATCH anchors.

Refer to the following illustration to learn which anchors to use.



A. Passenger Side Rear Seating Position and Lower Anchors 1 and 2

B. Center Rear Seating Position and Lower Anchors 3 and 4

C. Driver Side Rear Seating Position and Lower Anchors 4 and 5

There are five lower LATCH anchors in the rear seat.

- Use anchors 1 and 2 when installing a child restraint using LATCH in seating position A.
- Use anchors 3 and 4 when installing a child restraint using LATCH in seating position B.
- Use anchors 4 and 5 when installing a child restraint using LATCH in seating position C.

Installing child restraints using LATCH in seating positions B and C at the same time is prohibited.

Make sure to attach the child restraint at the proper anchor location.

This system is designed to make installation of child restraints easier. When using lower anchors, do not use the vehicle's safety belts. Instead use the vehicle's anchors and child restraint attachments to secure the restraints. Some restraints also use another vehicle anchor to secure a top tether.

1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.

   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.

   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

   If the head restraint interferes with the proper installation of the child restraint, the head restraint may be removed. See “Head Restraint Removal and Reinstallation” at the end of this section.

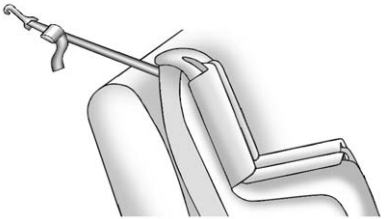
   1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.

2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if equipped. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:

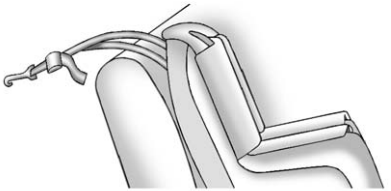
   2.1. Find the top tether anchor.

   Open the cover to expose the anchor.

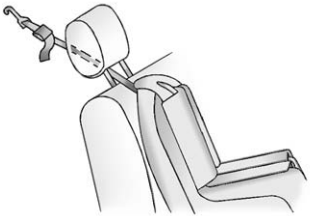
   2.2. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to the child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



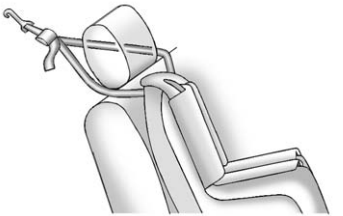
- If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint, or the headrest or head restraint has been removed, and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.



- If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint, or the headrest or head restraint has been removed, and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



- If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts. See *Head Restraints on page 3-2*.



- If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the headrest or head restraint.

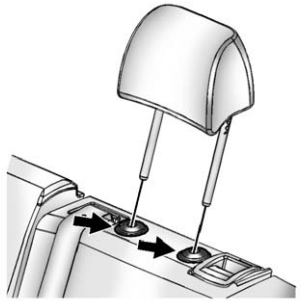
3. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement, for proper installation.

Head Restraint Removal and Reinstallation

The rear outboard head restraints can be removed if they interfere with the proper installation of the child restraint.

To remove the head restraint:

1. Partially fold the seatback forward. See *Rear Seats on page 3-11* for additional information.

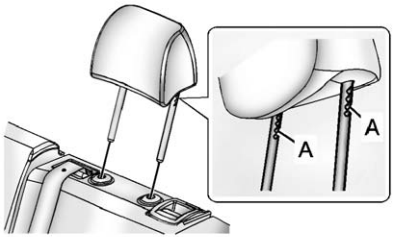


2. Press both buttons on the head restraint posts at the same time, and pull up on the head restraint.
3. Store the head restraint in the trunk of the vehicle.
4. When the child restraint is removed, reinstall the head restraint before the seating position is used.

⚠ WARNING

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To reinstall the head restraint:



1. Insert the head restraint posts into the holes in the top of the seatback. The notches (A) on the posts must face the driver side of the vehicle.
2. Push the head restraint down.

   If necessary, press the height adjustment release button to further lower the head restraint. See *Head Restraints on page 3-2*.
3. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.

Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash

⚠ WARNING

A crash can damage the LATCH system in the vehicle. A damaged LATCH system may not properly secure the child restraint, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the LATCH system is working properly after a crash, see your dealer to have the system inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, new LATCH system parts may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the LATCH system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat)

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

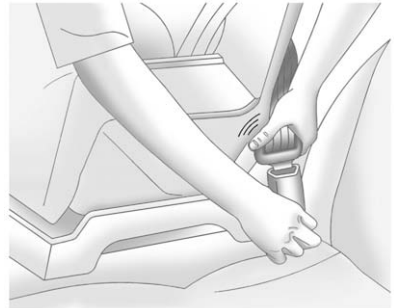
If the child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-43*.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.

   If the head restraint interferes with the proper installation of the child restraint, the head restraint may be removed. See “Head Restraint Removal and Reinstallation” under *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44*.

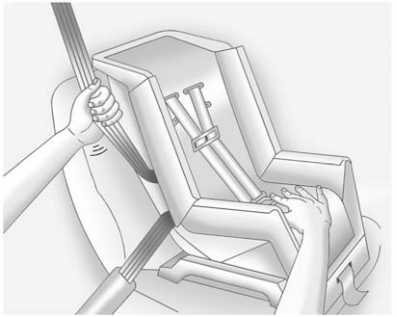
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

4. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 4 and 5.

6. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44* for more information.

7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it. If the head restraint was removed, reinstall it before the seating position is used. See “Head Restraint Removal and Reinstallation” under *Lower Anchors*

and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44 for additional information on installing the head restraint properly.

Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-43*.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side impact airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-29* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-16* for more information, including important safety information.

A label on the sun visor says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-29* for additional information.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured using a safety belt and it

uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-44* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag and seat-mounted side airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-16*.

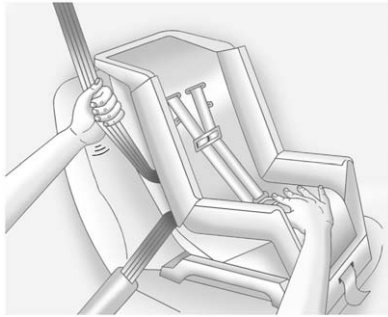
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

5. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

If the airbags are off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, see “If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint” under *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-29* for more information.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position.

✍ NOTES

Storage

Storage Compartments
Glove Box 4-1
Cupholders 4-1
Front Storage 4-1
Center Console Storage 4-2

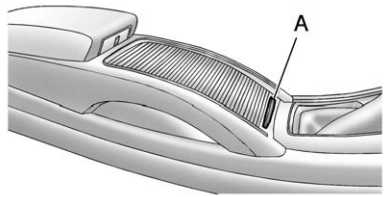
Additional Storage Features
Convenience Net 4-2

Storage Compartments

Glove Box

The glove box is located on the passenger side of the instrument panel. Lift up on the lever to open it.

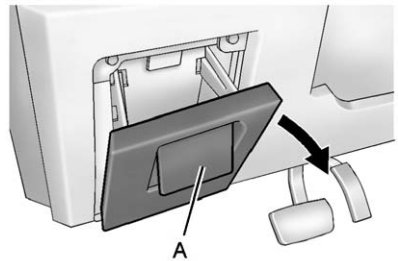
Cupholders



There are removable cupholders located in the center console. Slide the cover (A) to access the cupholders.

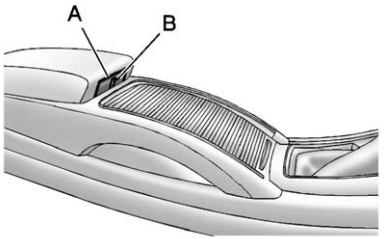
Cupholders are also located in the rear center armrest.

Front Storage



Pull up on the handle (A) and pull the cover down to open.

Center Console Storage



The armrest can be adjusted by sliding it to the desired position.

The center console has an upper tray and a lower main storage area.

To access the main storage area, adjust the armrest to the rear position and push button (A) to open. Push button (B) to access the upper tray.

An accessory power outlet is in the lower area. See *Power Outlets on page 5-7*.

Some vehicles might also have input jacks for auxiliary audio devices. See *Auxiliary Devices (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-39*.

Additional Storage Features

Convenience Net

Use the convenience net located in the trunk to store small loads as far forward as possible. The net should not be used to store heavy loads. Attach the net so the opening is facing up. Attach the net loops to the hooks on the rear panel of the trunk.

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment . . . 5-2
Steering Wheel Controls 5-2
Heated Steering Wheel 5-3
Horn 5-3
Windshield Wiper/Washer 5-3
Compass 5-5
Clock (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) 5-5
Power Outlets 5-7

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-9
Instrument Cluster 5-10
Speedometer 5-12
Odometer 5-12
Tachometer 5-12
Fuel Gauge 5-12
Driver Efficiency Gauge 5-13
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 5-14
Safety Belt Reminders 5-15
Airbag Readiness Light 5-16
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 5-16
Charging System Light 5-17
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-17
Brake System Warning Light 5-20
Electric Parking Brake Light 5-21
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 5-21
Traction Off Light 5-22
StabiliTrak® OFF Light 5-22
Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light 5-23
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 5-24
Tire Pressure Light 5-24
Engine Oil Pressure Light 5-25
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-25
Security Light 5-26
High-Beam On Light 5-26
Front Fog Lamp Light 5-26
Lamps On Reminder 5-26
Cruise Control Light 5-27
Door Ajar Light 5-27

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC) 5-27
Head-Up Display (HUD) 5-31

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 5-35
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 5-35
Brake System Messages 5-36
Compass Messages 5-36
Cruise Control Messages 5-36
Door Ajar Messages 5-37
Engine Cooling System Messages 5-37
Engine Oil Messages 5-38
Engine Power Messages 5-38
Fuel System Messages 5-39
Key and Lock Messages 5-39
Lamp Messages 5-39
Object Detection System Messages 5-39
Ride Control System Messages 5-40
Anti-theft Alarm System Messages 5-41
Starting the Vehicle Messages 5-41

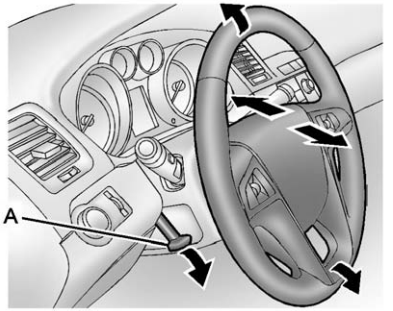
Tire Messages 5-41
Transmission Messages 5-42
Window Messages 5-42

Vehicle Personalization
Vehicle Personalization 5-43

Universal Remote System
Universal Remote System . . . 5-49
Universal Remote System Programming 5-49
Universal Remote System Operation 5-52

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

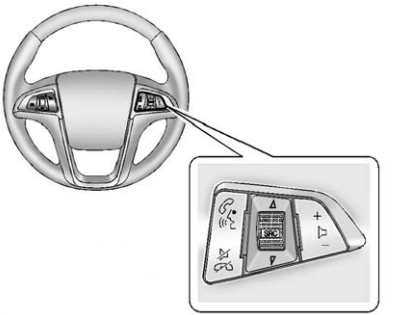


To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever (A) down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever (A) up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Steering Wheel Controls



For vehicles with audio steering wheel controls, some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

/ (Push to Talk): For vehicles with a Bluetooth®, OnStar, or navigation system, press to interact with those systems. See *Bluetooth (Overview) on page 7-57* or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) on page 7-59* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition) on page 7-63* or *Bluetooth (UHP Mexico Only) on page 7-69*, *OnStar Overview on page 14-1*, or the navigation manual for more information.

/ (Mute/End Call): Press to silence the vehicle speakers only. Press again to turn the sound on. For vehicles with OnStar or Bluetooth systems, press to reject an incoming call, or end a current call.

SRC (Thumbwheel Control): Turn to select an audio source.

Press or to select the next or previous favorite radio station, CD, or MP3 track.

+ − (Volume): Press + to increase the volume. Press − to decrease the volume.

Heated Steering Wheel

For vehicles with a heated steering wheel, the button for this feature is located on the climate control system.

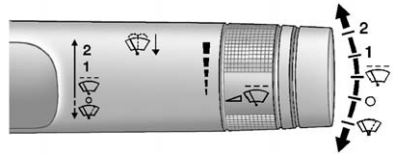
: Press to turn the heated steering wheel on or off. A light on the button displays when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to start heating.

Horn

Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

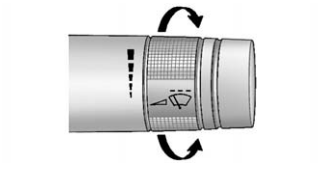
Windshield Wiper/Washer



The windshield wiper lever is on the right side of the steering column. With the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN, move the windshield wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

2: Use for fast wipes.

1: Use for slow wipes.



(Adjustable Interval Wipes): Move the lever to , then turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

(Off): Use to turn the windshield wipers off.

(Mist): Briefly move the wiper lever down for a single wipe or hold down for several wipes.

Clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they are frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement on page 10-29*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wipers. A circuit breaker stops them until the motor cools.

Wipe Parking

If the ignition is turned to LOCK/OFF while the wipers are on 1, 2, or , they will immediately stop.

If the windshield wiper lever is then moved to before the driver door is opened, or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windshield.

If the ignition is turned to LOCK/OFF during a windshield wash, the wipers will stop when they reach the base of the windshield.

Windshield Washer

Pull the windshield wiper lever toward you to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers.

The washer and wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached.

When the windshield wiper lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windshield washer had been activated. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-22* for information on filling the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

Compass

The vehicle may have a compass display on the Driver Information Center (DIC). The compass receives its heading and other information from the Global Positioning System (GPS) antenna, StabiliTrak, and vehicle speed information.

Avoid covering the GPS antenna for long periods of time with objects that may interfere with the antenna's ability to receive a satellite signal. See *Backglass Antenna on page 7-27* and *Satellite Radio Antenna on page 7-27* for the location of the vehicle's antennas. The compass system is designed to operate for a certain number of miles or degrees of turn before needing a signal from the GPS satellites. When the compass display shows CAL, drive the vehicle for a short distance in an open area where it can receive a GPS signal. The compass system will automatically determine when the GPS signal is restored and provide a heading again. See *Compass Messages on page 5-36* for more information on the messages that may be displayed for the compass.

Clock (Radio with CD and Touchscreen)

The infotainment system controls are used to access the time and date settings through the menu system. See *Overview (Radio with CD) on page 7-3* or *Overview (Radio with CD/DVD and MEM) on page 7-5* or *Overview (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-7* and *Operation on page 7-13* for information about how to use the menu system.

Setting the Time (Without Date Display)

1. Press the CONFIG button and select Time Settings, or press ◷.
2. Select Set Time.
3. Turn the Menu knob to adjust the highlighted value.
4. Press SELECT to select the next value.
5. To save the time and return to the Time Settings menu, press the ⇦ BACK button at any time or press SELECT after adjusting the minutes.

Setting the 12/24 Hour Format

1. Press the CONFIG button and select Time Settings, or press ◴.
2. Highlight 12/24 Hour Format.
3. Press SELECT to select the 12 hour or 24 hour display format.

Setting the Time and Date (With Date Display)

1. Press the CONFIG button and select Time and Date Settings, or press ◴.
2. Select Set Time or Set Date.
3. Turn the Menu knob to adjust the highlighted value.
4. Press SELECT to select the next value.
5. To save the time or date and return to the Time and Date Settings menu, press the ⇦ BACK button at any time or press SELECT after adjusting the minutes or year.

Setting the 12/24 Hour Format

1. Press the CONFIG button and select Time and Date Settings, or press ◴.
2. Highlight Set Time Format.
3. Press SELECT to select the 12 hour or 24 hour display format.

Setting the Month and Day Format

1. Press the CONFIG button and select Time and Date Settings, or press ◴.
2. Highlight Set Date Format.
3. Press SELECT to select MM/DD/YY (month/day/year) or DD/MM/YY (day/month/year).

Setting the Auto Time Adjust

1. Press the CONFIG button and select Time and Date Settings, or press ◴.
2. Highlight Auto Time Adjust.
3. Press SELECT to turn Auto Time Adjust on or off.
4. Press SELECT button to select Time Zone, and then select the Time Zone.
5. Press SELECT to turn Daylight Savings on or off.

Setting the Time and Date (Radio with CD and Touchscreen)

To set the time:

1. Press the CONFIG button to enter the menu options. Turn the Menuknob to scroll through the available setup features. Press the SELECT knob or press the Time screen button to display other options within that feature.
2. Press + or − to decrease or increase the Hours and Minutes displayed on the clock.

12/24 HR Format: Press the 12 HR screen button for standard time; press the 24 HR screen button for military time.

Day + or Day −: Press the Day + or Day − display buttons to increase or decrease the day.

Display: Press Display to turn the display of the time on the screen on or off.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

There are two accessory power outlets. One is located under the armrest inside the center console storage and the other is on the rear of the center floor console.

The outlet is powered when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY, or until the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of turning off the vehicle. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-27*.

Open the protective cover to use the accessory power outlet.

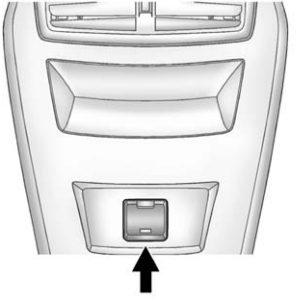
Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle or adapter fuses. If there is a problem, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment on page 9-63*.

Notice: **Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as cell phone charge cords.**

Power Outlet 110 Volt Alternating Current

The vehicle may have a power outlet that can be used to plug in electrical equipment with a maximum limit of 150 watts.



The power outlet is located on the rear of the center console.

An indicator light on the outlet comes on when in use. The light comes on when the ignition is in ON/RUN, equipment requiring less than 150 watts is plugged into the outlet, and no system fault is detected.

The indicator light on the outlet will not turn on if the plug is not fully seated.

If you try to connect equipment using more than 150 watts or a system fault is detected, the equipment may operate for a short period and turn itself off.
A protection circuit shuts off the power supply and the indicator light turns off. To reset the circuit, unplug the item and plug it back in or turn the Remote Accessory Power (RAP) off and then back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-27*. Prolonged usage of the power outlet at the maximum load of 150 watts may cause the outlet to overheat and automatically shut down. The power restarts when

equipment that operates within the limit is plugged into the outlet and a system fault is not detected.

The power outlet is not designed for the following equipment, and may not work properly if any of the following is plugged in:

- Equipment with high initial peak wattage such as: compressor-driven refrigerators and electric power tools.
- Other equipment requiring an extremely stable power supply such as: microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

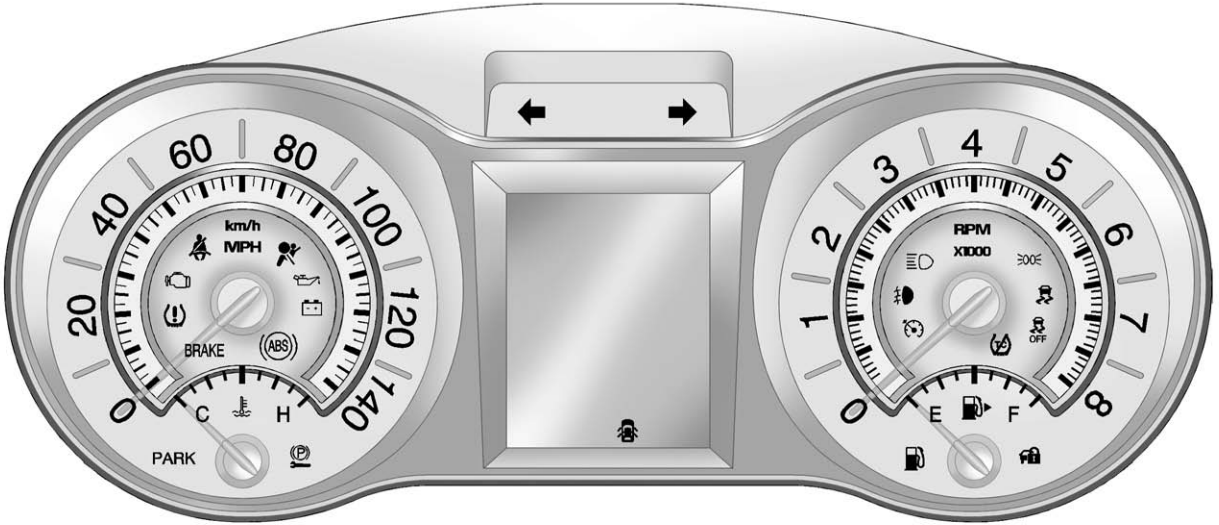
Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

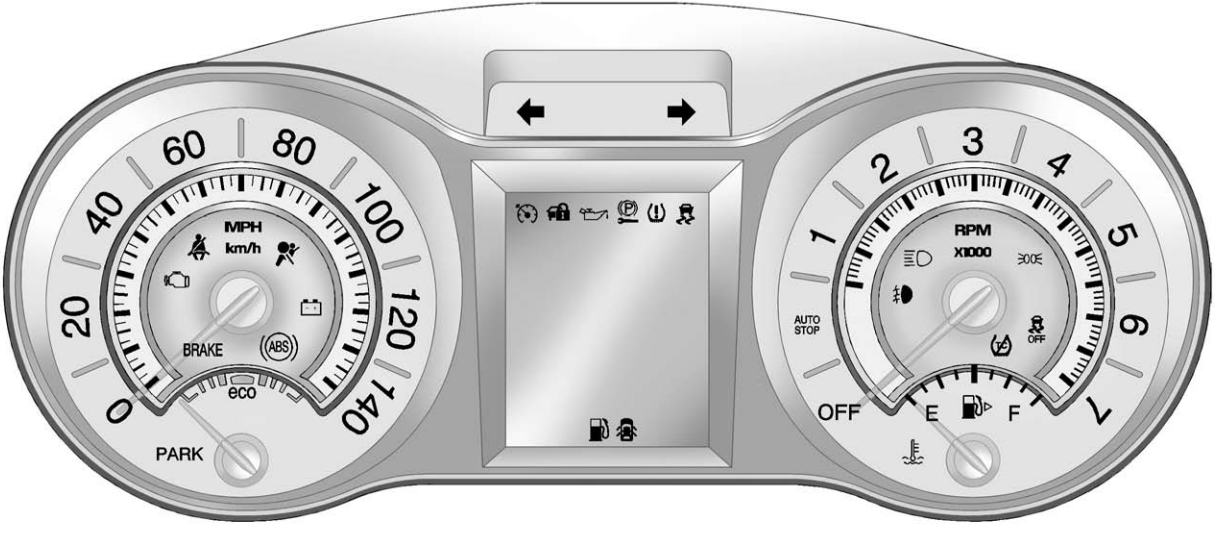
Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Often gauges and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Instrument Cluster



English Shown, Metric Similar



English eAssist Shown, Metric eAssist Similar

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in either kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either kilometers or miles.

This vehicle has a tamper-resistant odometer. If the vehicle needs a new odometer installed, the new one is set to the mileage of the old odometer. If this is not possible, it is set at zero and a label is put on the driver door to show the old mileage reading.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

For eAssist vehicles, when the ignition is in ON/RUN, the tachometer indicates the vehicle status. When pointing to AUTO, the engine is off but the vehicle is on and can move. The engine could auto start at any time. When the indicator points to OFF, the vehicle is off.

When the engine is on, the tachometer will indicate the engine's revolutions per minute (rpm). The tachometer may vary by several hundred rpm's, during auto stop mode, when the engine is shutting off and restarting.

A slight bump may be felt when the transmission is determining the most fuel efficient operating range.

Fuel Gauge

Metric

English

When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is left in the tank.

An arrow on the fuel gauge indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light comes on. There is still a little fuel left, but the fuel tank should be filled soon.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. None of these show a problem with the fuel gauge:

- At the service station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gauge indicated. For example, the gauge indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gauge moves a little while turning a corner or speeding up.
- The gauge takes a few seconds to stabilize after the ignition is turned on, and goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

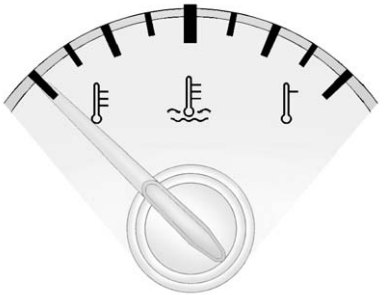
Driver Efficiency Gauge

For eAssist vehicles, this gauge assists in driving efficiently and will vary based on driver input.

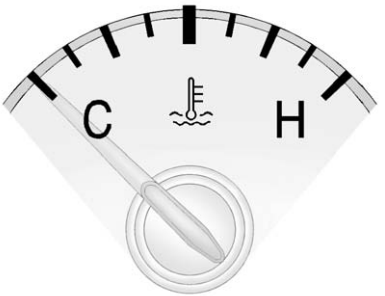
To maximize efficiency, keep the gauge pointed in the solid green zone in the center of the gauge.

The gauge moves to the left when braking and to the right when accelerating. When either is done aggressively, the vehicle is being driven less efficiently and the gauge will move further from the center.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Metric



English

This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.

If the gauge pointer moves toward the shaded area, the engine is too hot.

In eAssist vehicles, the engine coolant warning light comes on when the engine is too hot. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 5-24* in this section.

This reading indicates the same thing as the warning light. It means that the engine coolant has overheated. If the vehicle has been operating under normal driving conditions, pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-19* for more information.

Safety Belt Reminders

Driver Safety Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver safety belt reminder light on the instrument panel cluster.

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their safety belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled.

This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver safety belt is buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind front passengers to fasten their safety belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled.

For more information see *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-16*.

This cycle continues several times if the front passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the front passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt reminder light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the reminder light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the safety belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), passenger sensing system, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 3-22*.

The airbag readiness light comes on and stays on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. Then the light goes out.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-29* for important safety information. The instrument panel has a passenger airbag status indicator.

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF for several seconds as a system check.

If you are using remote start, if equipped, to start the vehicle from a distance, you may not see the system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF to let you know the status of the front outboard passenger frontal airbag.

If the word ON is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the front outboard passenger frontal airbag is allowed to inflate.

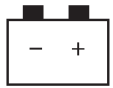
If the word OFF is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-16* for more information, including important safety information.

Charging System Light



The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. The light turns off when the engine is started. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors the operation of the vehicle to ensure emissions are at acceptable levels, to produce a cleaner environment.

This light comes on when the vehicle is placed in ON/RUN for key access or Service Only Mode for keyless access, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Ignition Positions (Key Access) on page 9-18* or *Ignition Positions (Keyless Access) on page 9-20* for more information.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on and stays on while the engine is running, this indicates that there is an OBD II problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system assists the dealer technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Notice: **If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Notice: **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/ Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-3*.**

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If the vehicle is towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park. Turn the vehicle off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Light On Steady: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The following may correct an emissions system malfunction:

- Check that the fuel cap is fully installed. See *Filling the Tank on page 9-55*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.
- Check that good quality fuel is used. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and may cause stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

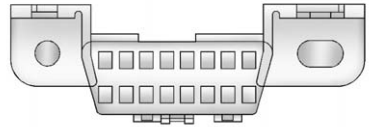
If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

See *Recommended Fuel on page 9-53*.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. The dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

Some local governments may have programs to inspect the on-vehicle emission control equipment. For the inspection, the emission system test equipment is connected to the vehicle's Data Link Connector (DLC).



The DLC is under the instrument panel next to the steering wheel. See your dealer if assistance is needed.

The vehicle may not pass inspection if:

- The malfunction indicator lamp is on while the vehicle is running. The vehicle is in ON/RUN for keyed access, or service only mode for keyless access and the malfunction indicator lamp does not come on. See your dealer for assistance in verifying proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp.

- The OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if the 12-volt battery has recently been replaced or run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If this has been done and the vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD II system readiness, your dealer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have your brake system inspected right away.

BRAKE

Metric **English**

If the vehicle has antilock brakes, this light should come on when the vehicle is placed in START. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on while driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. The pedal may be harder to push or it can go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. Try turning off and restarting the vehicle one or two times. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-21* and *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-99*.

⚠ WARNING

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Electric Parking Brake Light

PARK

Metric **English**

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the parking brake status light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system. A message may also display in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Brake System Messages on page 5-36* for more information.

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the parking brake warning light should come on briefly when ignition is placed in ON/RUN. If it does not come on, then have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light comes on, there is a problem with a system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible. See *Parking Brake on page 9-36* for more information.

For vehicles with the uplevel or eAssist cluster, this telltale displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC) screen.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off.

If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn off the vehicle. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. A chime may also sound when the light comes on steady.

If the ABS light is the only light on, the vehicle has regular brakes, but the antilock brakes are not functioning.

If both the ABS and the brake system warning light are on, the vehicle's antilock brakes are not functioning and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See your dealer for service.

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-20*.

See *Brake System Messages on page 5-36* for all brake related DIC messages.

Traction Off Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off by pressing and releasing the TCS/StabiliTrak button.

This light also comes on and the system turns off if there is a problem with the traction control system.

If the light comes on and stays on for an extended period of time while the system is turned on, the vehicle needs service.

See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-38* and *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-40* for more information.

StabiliTrak® OFF Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on when the StabiliTrak system is turned off.
If the Traction Control System (TCS) is off, wheel spin is not limited.
If StabiliTrak is off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle.
Turn on the TCS and the StabiliTrak system and the warning light turns off.

See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-38* and *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-40* for more information.

Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light

The Traction Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by the dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light is on while certain DIC messages display, this indicates that the TCS and StabiliTrak systems are not working or are disabled.

If the light is on and not flashing, the TCS and potentially the StabiliTrak system have been disabled. Check the DIC messages to determine which feature(s) is no longer functioning and whether it is because of the driver turning off the feature(s), or because the system is not working properly and the vehicle requires service.

If the TCS is disabled, wheel spin is not limited. If the StabiliTrak system is disabled, the system does not aid in maintaining directional control of the vehicle.

If the indicator/warning light is on and flashing, the TCS or the StabiliTrak system is actively working. Check the DIC messages for details to determine which system is working. If a message appears in the DIC, the system may be limiting wheel spin and aiding in maintaining directional control of the vehicle.

See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-40* and *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-38* for more information.

See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-40* for more information on the messages associated with this light.

For vehicles with an uplevel cluster, this light comes on in the Driver information Center (DIC).

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

For eAssist vehicles, this light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by the dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light goes off.

Notice: **Driving with the engine coolant temperature warning light on could cause the vehicle to overheat. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-19*. The vehicle's engine could be damaged, and it might not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never drive with the engine coolant temperature warning light on.**

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-19* for more information.

Tire Pressure Light

For vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tire pressures and the TPMS.

When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Center (DIC) tire pressure message may also display. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-35* for more information. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54* for more information.

When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-57* for more information.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

⚠ WARNING

Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. The engine can become so hot that it catches fire. Someone could be burned. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.**

The oil pressure light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

For vehicles with the uplevel or eAssist cluster, this telltale displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC) screen.

Low Fuel Warning Light

This light, below the fuel gauge, comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not come on have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

This light also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. When fuel is added the light should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle serviced.

For vehicles with an uplevel or eAssist cluster, this telltale displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC) screen.

Security Light

The immobilizer light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobilizer Operation (Key Access) on page 2-15* or *Immobilizer Operation (Keyless Access) on page 2-16* for more information.

For eAssist vehicles, this light displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

High-Beam On Light

This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-2* for more information.

Front Fog Lamp Light

For vehicles with fog lamps, this light comes on when the fog lamps are on.

The light goes out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Fog Lamps on page 6-5* for more information.

Lamps On Reminder

The lamps on reminder light comes on when the lights are in use.

Cruise Control Light

This light is white whenever the cruise control is set and turns green when the cruise control is active.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 9-42* for more information.

For vehicles with the uplevel or eAssist cluster, this telltale will be shown in the Driver Information Center (DIC) screen.

Door Ajar Light

This light comes on in the Driver Information Center (DIC) when a door is open or not securely latched.

Before driving, check that all doors are properly closed.

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The Driver Information Center (DIC) displays information about the vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-35* for more information. All messages appear in the DIC display located in the center of the instrument panel cluster.

On some models, the DIC may show warning lights or indicators in the top portion of the display. See *Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators on page 5-9* for more information.

The vehicle may also have features that can be customized through the controls on the radio. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information.

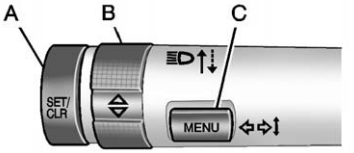
DIC Operation and Displays

The DIC has different displays which can be accessed by using the DIC buttons on the turn signal lever to the left of the steering wheel. The DIC displays trip, fuel, vehicle system information, and warning messages if a system problem is detected.

The bottom of the DIC display shows what position the shift lever is in, the odometer, and the direction the vehicle is driving.

In cold weather the DIC display may change slowly. This is normal and will move more quickly as the vehicle's interior temperature rises.

DIC Buttons



A. **SET/CLR:** Press to set or clear the menu item when it is displayed.

B. △ / ▽ **(Thumbwheel):** Use to scroll through the items in each menu. A small marker will move across the bottom of the page as you scroll through the items. This shows where each page is in the menu.

C. **MENU:** Press to get to the Trip/Fuel Menu and the Vehicle Information Menu.

Trip/Fuel Menu Items

Press MENU on the turn signal lever until Trip/Fuel Information Menu is displayed. Use △ / ▽ to scroll through the following menu items:

- Digital Speedometer
- Trip 1
- Trip 2
- Power Flow Gauge (eAssist Only)
- Fuel Range
- Average Fuel Economy/ Instantaneous Fuel Economy
- Average Vehicle Speed
- Timer
- Navigation

Digital Speedometer

The speedometer shows how fast the vehicle is moving in either kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph). The speedometer cannot be reset.

Trip 1 and Trip 2

This display shows the current distance traveled, in either kilometers (km) or miles (mi), since the last reset for the trip odometer. The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing SET/CLR while the trip odometer display is showing.

Power Flow Gauge (eAssist Only)

This display shows the operating mode of the eAssist system and the high voltage battery charge level. The animation indicates the direction of energy flow.

Fuel Range

This display shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refueling. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Fuel range cannot be reset.

Average Fuel Economy/ Instantaneous Fuel Economy

On some models, this display shows Average Fuel Economy. On other models, this display shows both Average Fuel Economy and Instantaneous Fuel Economy.

The Average Fuel Economy display shows the approximate average liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km (mpg) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. The fuel economy can be reset by pressing SET/CLR while the Average Fuel Economy display is showing.

The Instantaneous Fuel Economy display shows the current fuel economy in liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number reflects only the fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change. Unlike average economy, this display cannot be reset.

Average Vehicle Speed

This display shows the average speed of the vehicle in miles per hour (mph) or kilometers per hour (km/h). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value. The average speed can be reset by pressing SET/CLR while the Average Vehicle Speed display is showing.

Timer

This display can be used as a timer. To start the timer, press SET/CLR while Timer is displayed. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset, not including time the ignition is off. Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after which the display will return to zero. To stop the timer, press SET/CLR briefly while Timer is displayed. To reset the timer to zero, press and hold SET/CLR.

Navigation

This display is used for the OnStar or Navigation System Turn-by-Turn guidance. See *OnStar Overview on page 14-1* or the navigation manual, if the vehicle has navigation, for more information.

Vehicle Information Menu Items

Press MENU on the turn signal lever until Vehicle Information Menu is displayed. Use △ / ▽ to scroll through the following menu items:

- Unit
- Tire Pressure
- Jump Start (eAssist Only)
- Remaining Oil Life
- Battery Voltage

Unit

Move △ / ▽ to switch between metric or US when the Unit display is active. Press SET/CLR to confirm the setting. This will change the displays on the cluster and DIC to either metric or English (US) measurements.

Tire Pressure

The display will show a vehicle with the approximate pressures of all four tires. Tire pressure is displayed in either kilopascal (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi). See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 10-56* and *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-57* for more information.

Jump Start (eAssist Only)

This display allows for on-board jump starting of the vehicle. See “Jump Starting (On-board with eAssist Only)” for more information.

Remaining Oil Life

This display shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life.
If REMAINING OIL LIFE 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-38*. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Maintenance Schedule on page 11-3* for more information.

Remember, the Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Also, be careful not to reset the Oil Life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, press SET/CLR while the Oil Life display is active. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*.

Battery Voltage

This display, available on some vehicles, shows the current battery voltage. If the voltage is in the normal range, the value will display. For example, the display may read Battery Voltage 15.0 Volts. The vehicle's charging system regulates voltage based on the state of the battery. The battery voltage can fluctuate while viewing this information on the DIC. This is normal. See *Charging System Light on page 5-17* for more information. If there is a problem with the battery charging system, the DIC will display a message

Compass

The vehicle may have a compass display in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Compass on page 5-5* for more information.

Head-Up Display (HUD)

⚠ WARNING

If the HUD image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may take you more time to see things you need to see when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the HUD image dim and placed low in your field of view.

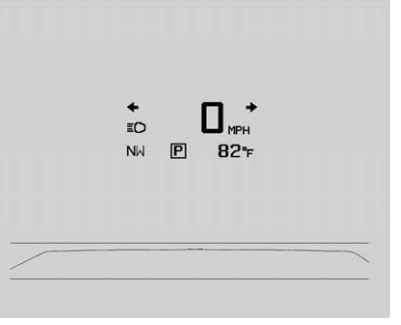
For vehicles with the Head-Up Display (HUD), some information concerning the operation of the vehicle is projected onto the windshield. This includes the speedometer reading, rpm reading, transmission position, outside air temperature, compass heading, and a brief display of the current radio station, including XM information or CD track. It will also display turn-by-turn navigation information if the vehicle has a navigation radio.

The images are projected through the HUD lens located on the driver side of the instrument panel.

Notice: **If you try to use the HUD image as a parking aid, you may misjudge the distance and damage your vehicle. Do not use the HUD image as a parking aid.**

The HUD information can be displayed in one of three languages, English, French, or Spanish. The speedometer reading and other numerical values can be displayed in either English or metric units.

The language selection is changed through the radio and the units of measurement is changed through the trip computer in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21* and *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27*.



HUD Display on the Vehicle Windshield

The HUD information appears as an image focused out toward the front of the vehicle.

When the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ON/RUN/START position, HUD will display an introductory message for a short time, until the HUD is ready.

The following indicator lights come on in the instrument panel when activated and also appear on the HUD:

- Turn Signal Indicators
- High-Beam Indicator Symbol

The HUD temporarily displays some vehicle warnings, such as CHECK TIRE PRESSURE and FUEL LEVEL LOW when these messages are on the DIC trip computer.

The HUD also displays the following messages on vehicles with these systems, when they are active:

- TRACTION CONTROL ACTIVE
- STABILITRAK ACTIVE

When the HUD is on, the speedometer reading is continually displayed. The current radio station or CD track number will display for a short period of time after the radio or CD track status changes. This happens whenever radio information is changed. The speedometer size is reduced when radio, CD information, warnings, or turn-by-turn navigation information are displayed on the HUD.

The HUD control is located to the left of the steering wheel.

To adjust the HUD image so that items are properly displayed, do the following:

1. Adjust the driver seat to a comfortable position.
2. Start the engine.
3. Adjust the HUD controls.

Use the following settings to adjust the HUD.

OFF: To turn HUD off, turn the HUD dimming knob fully counterclockwise until the HUD display turns off.

Brightness: Turn the dimming knob clockwise or counterclockwise to brighten or dim the display.

∧ **(Up)** or ∨ **(Down):** Press the up or down arrows to center the HUD image in your view. The HUD image can only be adjusted up and down, not side to side.

PAGE: Press to select the display formats. Release the PAGE button when the format number with the desired display is shown on the HUD. If vehicle messages are displayed, pressing PAGE may clear the message.

The three formats are as follows:

English Shown, Metric Similar

Format One: This display gives the speedometer reading (in English or metric units), turn signal indication, high-beam indication, transmission positions, outside air temperature, and compass heading.

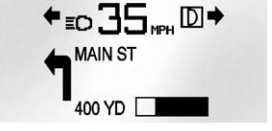
English Shown, Metric Similar

Format Two: This display includes the information in Format One without the transmission information, the outside air temperature, and compass heading.

English Shown, Metric Similar

Format Three: This display includes much of the information in Format One along with a circular tachometer, but without outside air temperature and compass heading.

All formats will show the turn-by-turn navigation information and provide details about the next driving maneuver to be made. When you near your next maneuver, the HUD will display a distance bar that will empty the closer you get to your maneuver. All navigation information is provided to the HUD by the navigation radio or OnStar service, for vehicles that have these features.



English Shown, Metric Similar

The HUD image displayed on the windshield will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting. However, the HUD brightness control can still be adjusted as needed.

The HUD image can temporarily light up depending on the angle and position of the sunlight on the HUD display. This is normal and will change when the angle of the sunlight on the HUD display changes.

Polarized sunglasses could make the HUD image harder to see.

Care of the HUD

Clean the inside of the windshield as needed to remove any dirt or film that could reduce the sharpness or clarity of the HUD image.

To clean the HUD lens, use a soft, clean cloth that has household glass cleaner sprayed on it. Wipe the HUD lens gently, then dry it. Do not spray cleaner directly on the lens because the cleaner could leak into the unit.

If You Cannot See the HUD Image When the Ignition Is On

- Is anything covering the HUD lens?
- Is the HUD dimmer setting bright enough?
- Is the HUD image adjusted to the proper height?
- Are you wearing polarized sunglasses?
- Still no HUD image? Check the fuse in the instrument panel fuse block. See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 10-42*.

If the HUD Image Is Not Clear

- Is the HUD image too bright?
- Are the windshield and HUD lens clean?

If the HUD image is not correct, contact your dealer.

Keep in mind that the windshield is part of the HUD system.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may display one after the other.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing SET/CLR. The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed. All messages should be taken seriously and clearing the messages does not correct the problem.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE

This message displays when the vehicle has detected that the battery voltage is dropping beyond a reasonable point. The battery saver system starts reducing certain features of the vehicle that you may be able to notice. At the point that features are disabled, this message is displayed. It means that the vehicle is trying to save the charge in the battery. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

LOW BATTERY

This message is displayed when the battery voltage is low. See *Battery on page 10-25* for more information.

SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

This message is displayed when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

Brake System Messages

BRAKE FLUID LOW

This message is displayed when the brake fluid level is low. See *Brake Fluid on page 10-24*.

STEP ON BRAKE TO RELEASE PARK BRAKE

This message is displayed if you attempt to release the electric parking brake without the brake pedal applied. See *Parking Brake on page 9-36* for more information.

RELEASE PARK BRAKE

This message is displayed if the electric parking brake is on while the vehicle is in motion. Release it before you attempt to drive. See *Parking Brake on page 9-36* for more information.

SERVICE BRAKE ASSIST

This message may be displayed when there is a problem with the brake boost assist system. When this message is displayed, the brake boost assist motor might be heard operating and you might notice pulsation in the brake pedal. This is normal under these conditions. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE PARKING BRAKE

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the electric parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-36* for more information. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

Compass Messages

CAL

This message is displayed when the compass needs to be calibrated. See *Compass on page 5-5*.

– – –

Three dashes will be displayed if the compass needs service. See your dealer for service.

Cruise Control Messages

CRUISE SET TO XXX

This message displays when the cruise control is set and shows the speed it was set to. See *Cruise Control on page 9-42* for more information.

Door Ajar Messages

DRIVER DOOR OPEN

This message will display when the driver door is open. Close the door completely.

HOOD OPEN

This message will display when the hood is open. Close the hood completely.

LEFT REAR DOOR OPEN

This message will display when the driver side rear door is open. Close the door completely.

PASSENGER DOOR OPEN

This message will display when the front passenger door is open. Close the door completely.

RIGHT REAR DOOR OPEN

This message will display when the passenger side rear door is open. Close the door completely.

TRUNK OPEN

This message will display when the trunk is open. Close the trunk completely.

Engine Cooling System Messages

A/C OFF DUE TO HIGH ENGINE TEMP

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor automatically turns off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the air conditioning compressor turns back on. You can continue to drive the vehicle.

If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer as soon as possible to avoid damage to the engine.

COOLANT LEVEL LOW ADD COOLANT

This message will display if the coolant is low. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-16*.

ENGINE OVERHEATED — IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

ENGINE OVERHEATED — STOP ENGINE

This message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

Engine Oil Messages

CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. When you change the engine oil, be sure to reset the Oil Life System. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12* and *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27* for information on how to reset the system. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9* and *Maintenance Schedule on page 11-3* for more information.

ENGINE OIL HOT, IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the engine oil temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

ENGINE OIL LOW — ADD OIL

This message displays when the engine oil level is too low. Check the oil level. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

OIL PRESSURE LOW — STOP ENGINE

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

Engine Power Messages

ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Fuel System Messages

FUEL LEVEL LOW

This message displays when the vehicle is low on fuel. Refuel as soon as possible.

TIGHTEN GAS CAP

This message displays when the fuel cap is not on tight. Tighten the fuel cap.

Key and Lock Messages

NO REMOTE DETECTED

This message displays when the transmitter battery is weak on vehicles with keyless access. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4* for more information.

REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be replaced.

Lamp Messages

AFL (Adaptive Forward Lighting) LAMPS NEED SERVICE

This message displays when the Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) system is disabled and needs service. See your dealer. See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) on page 6-3* for more information.

Object Detection System Messages

PARK ASSIST OFF

This message displays when the park assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-44*.

SERVICE PARK ASSIST

This message displays if there is a problem with the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system. Do not use this system to help you park. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-44* for more information. See your dealer for service.

SERVICE BLIND ZONE ALERT SYSTEM

If this message appears, both SBZA displays will remain on indicating there is a problem with the SBZA system. If these displays remain on after continued driving, the system needs service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT SYSTEM OFF

This message indicates that the driver has turned the system off.

SIDE BLIND ZONE SYS. UNAVAILABLE

This message indicates that the SBZA system is disabled because the sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in the blind zone. The sensor may be blocked by mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush. This message may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray. The vehicle does not need service. For cleaning, see *Exterior Care on page 10-102*.

Ride Control System Messages

ALL WHEEL DRIVE OFF

This message displays when the All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System has been turned off. See *All-Wheel Drive on page 9-34*.

SERVICE ALL WHEEL DRIVE SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a problem with the All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System. See your dealer for service.

SERVICE REAR AXLE

This message displays when there is a problem with the All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System. See your dealer for service.

SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL

This message displays when there is a problem with the Traction Control System (TCS). When this message is displayed, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly. See your dealer for service.

SERVICE STABILITRAK

This message displays if there is a problem with the StabiliTrak system. If this message appears, try to reset the system. Stop; turn off the engine for at least 15 seconds; then start the engine again. If this message still comes on, it means there is a problem. See your dealer for service. The vehicle is safe to drive, however, you do not have the benefit of StabiliTrak, so reduce your speed and drive accordingly.

SPORT MODE ON

This message displays when using the selective ride control. See *Selective Ride Control on page 9-41* for more information.

TRACTION CONTROL OFF

This message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) is turned off. Adjust your driving accordingly.

Anti-theft Alarm System Messages

THEFT ATTEMPTED

This message displays if the vehicle detects a tamper condition.

Starting the Vehicle Messages

JUMP START ACTIVE WAIT TO START

This message displays while performing an on-board jump start of the vehicle. See “Jump Starting (On-board with eAssist Only)” for more information.

JUMP START COMPLETE ATTEMPT START

This message displays while performing an on-board jump start of the vehicle. See “Jump Starting (On-board with eAssist Only)” for more information.

JUMP START DISABLED SEE OWNERS MANUAL

This message displays if there is a problem with the on-board jump start system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

Tire Messages

TIRE PRESSURE LOW ADD AIR TO TIRE

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle's tires is low.

The low tire pressure warning light will also come on. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 5-24*.

If a tire pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Inflate the tires by adding air until the tire pressure is equal to the values shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tires on page 10-47*, *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*, and *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.

You can receive more than one tire pressure message at a time. To read the other messages that may have been sent at the same time, press the SET/CLR button. The DIC also shows the tire pressure values. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27*.

SERVICE TIRE MONITOR SYSTEM

This message displays if there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-57* for more information.

TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE

This message displays when the system is learning new tires. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-57* for more information.

Transmission Messages

SERVICE TRANSMISSION

This message displays if there is a problem with the transmission. See your dealer.

SHIFT TO PARK

This message displays when the transmission needs to be shifted to P (Park). This may appear when attempting to remove the key from the ignition or from the vehicle if the vehicle is not in P (Park).

TRANSMISSION HOT — IDLE ENGINE

This message displays and a chime sounds if the transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message clears when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

Window Messages

OPEN, THEN CLOSE DRIVER WINDOW

This message is displayed when the window needs to be reprogrammed. If the vehicle's battery has been recharged or disconnected, you will need to reprogram each front window for the express-up feature to work. See *Power Windows on page 2-20* for more information.

OPEN, THEN CLOSE PASSENGER WINDOW

This message is displayed when the window needs to be reprogrammed. If the vehicle's battery has been recharged or disconnected, you will need to reprogram each front window for the express-up feature to work. See *Power Windows on page 2-20* for more information.

Vehicle Personalization

The audio system controls are used to access the personalization menus for customizing vehicle features.

CONFIG (Configuration): Press to access the Configuration Settings menu.

Menu Knob: Turn to scroll through the menus.

SELECT: Press to enter the menus and select menu items.

⇦ **BACK:** Press to exit or move backward in a menu.

Entering the Personalization Menus

1. Press CONFIG to access the Configuration Settings menu.
2. Turn the Menu knob to highlight Vehicle Settings.
3. Press SELECT to select the Vehicle Settings menu.

The following list of menu items may be available:

- Climate and Air Quality
- Comfort and Convenience
- Collision/Detection Systems
- Language
- Lighting
- Power Door Locks
- Remote Lock/Unlock/Start
- Return to Factory Settings

Turn the Menu knob to highlight the menu. Press SELECT to select it. Each of the menus is detailed in the following information.

Climate and Air Quality

Select the Climate and Air Quality menu and the following may be displayed:

- Auto Fan Speed
- Air Quality Sensor
- Auto Heated Seats
- Air Conditioning Mode
- Remote Start Auto Heated Seats
- Remote Start Cooled Seats
- Auto Defog
- Auto Rear Defog

Auto Fan Speed

This will allow you to select the automatic fan speed. It can be adjusted to run lower or higher than normal.

Press SELECT when Auto Fan Speed is highlighted to open the menu. Turn the Menu knob to highlight High, Medium, or Low.

Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Air Quality Sensor

This will allow you to select whether the system will operate at high or low sensitivity. Only vehicles with the dual zone climate control will have this option.

Press SELECT when Air Quality Sensor is highlighted to open the menu. Turn the Menu knob to highlight High or Low. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Auto Heated Seats

If equipped and turned on, this feature will automatically activate heated seats at the level required by the interior temperature. The auto heated seats can be turned off by using the heated seat buttons on the climate control panel.

Press SELECT when Auto Heated Seats is highlighted to open the menu. Turn the Menu knob to highlight On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Air Conditioning Mode

This allows selection of automatic start of the air conditioning upon vehicle start. Selecting On indicates the air conditioning will be on when the vehicle is started. Selecting Off turns the air conditioning off each time the vehicle is started. Last Setting will resume the last setting when the vehicle was shut off.

Press SELECT when Air Conditioning Mode is highlighted to open the menu. Turn the Menu knob to highlight Off, On, or Last Setting. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Remote Start Auto Heated Seats

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn the heated seats on when using remote start on cold days.

Press SELECT when Remote Start Auto Heated Seats is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Remote Start Cooled Seats

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn the cooled seats on when using remote start on warm days.

Press SELECT when Remote Start Cooled Seats is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Auto Defog

This will allow you to turn the auto defog on or off. Only vehicles with the dual zone climate control will have this option.

Press SELECT when Auto Defog is highlighted to open the menu. Turn the Menu knob to highlight On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Auto Rear Defog

If equipped, this will allow you to turn the auto rear defog on or off. This feature will automatically turn on the rear defogger when it is cold outside.

Press SELECT when Auto Rear Defog is highlighted to open the menu. Turn the Menu knob to highlight On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Comfort and Convenience

Select the Comfort and Convenience menu and the following will be displayed:

- Chime Volume
- Driver Seat Easy Exit
- Park Tilt Mirrors

Chime Volume

This allows selection of the chime volume level.

Press SELECT when Chime Volume is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select Normal or High. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Driver Seat Easy Exit

When on, this feature will move the driver seat rearward upon turning the ignition off and opening the driver door. This may be performed to make it easier to exit the vehicle. See “Easy Exit Driver Seat” under *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

This allows you to turn the easy exit seat feature on or off.

Press SELECT when Driver Seat Easy Exit is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Park Tilt Mirrors

When on, both the driver and passenger mirrors will tilt downward when the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse) to improve visibility of the ground near the rear wheels. They will return to their previous driving position when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), the ignition is turned to OFF, or the vehicle is left in R (Reverse). See *Park Tilt Mirrors on page 2-18* for more information.

This allows you to turn the park tilt mirrors feature on or off.

Press SELECT when Park Tilt Mirrors is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select Driver & Passenger or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Collision/Detection Systems

Select the Collision/Detection Systems menu and the following will be displayed:

- Side Blind Zone Alert System

Side Blind Zone Alert System

If equipped, this feature allows the Side Blind Zone Alert System feature to be turned on or off.

Press SELECT when Side Blind Zone Alert System is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Language

Select the Language menu and the following will be displayed:

- English
- French
- Spanish

Turn the Menu knob to select the language. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Lighting

Select the Lighting menu and the following will be displayed:

- Exit Lighting
- Vehicle Locator Lights

Exit Lighting

This allows selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle and it is dark outside.

Press SELECT when Exit Lighting is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select Off, 30 Seconds, 1 Minute, or 2 Minutes. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Vehicle Locator Lights

This allows the vehicle locator lights to be turned on or off. The vehicle locator lights come on when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Press SELECT when Vehicle Locator Lights is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Power Door Locks

Select Power Door Locks and the following will be displayed:

- Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out
- Delayed Door Lock
- Auto Door Unlock

Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out

When on, this feature will keep the driver door from locking when the door is open. If off is selected, the Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out menu will be available and the door will lock as programmed through this menu.

Press SELECT when Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Delayed Door Lock

When on, this feature will delay the locking of the doors until five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal delayed locking is in use. Pressing either the power lock button or 🔒 on the RKE transmitter twice will override the delayed locking feature and immediately lock all of the doors.

Press SELECT when Delayed Door Lock is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Auto Door Unlock

This allows selection of which of the doors will automatically unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

Press SELECT when Auto Door Unlock is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select All Doors, Driver Door, or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Remote Lock/Unlock/Start

Select Remote Lock/Unlock/Start and the following will be displayed:

- Unlock Feedback (Lights)
- Locking Feedback
- Door Unlock Options
- Remote Recall
- Passive Entry
- Remote Left In Vehicle

Unlock Feedback (Lights)

When on, the exterior lamps will flash when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Press SELECT when Unlock Feedback (Lights) is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Locking Feedback

This allows selection of what type of feedback is given when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Press SELECT when Locking Feedback is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select Lights and Horn, Lights Only, Horn Only, or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Door Unlock Options

This allows selection of which doors will unlock when pressing 🔓 on the RKE transmitter.

Press SELECT when Door Unlock Options is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select All Doors or Driver Door Only. When set to Driver Door Only, the driver door will unlock the first time the unlock button is pressed and all doors will unlock when the button is pressed a second time. When set to All Doors, all of the doors will unlock at the first press of 🔓. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Remote Recall

When on, this feature will recall the current driver's last seat and outside mirror positions upon unlocking the driver door with the RKE, and opening that door. The current driver is identified when the RKE is used to unlock the driver door. If keyless access equipped, the recall will occur upon opening the driver door. See “Memory Remote Recall” under *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-5* for more information.

This allows the Remote Recall feature to be turned on or off. Remote Recall is when the memorized settings will be recalled as you unlock and enter the vehicle.

Press SELECT when Remote Recall is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Passive Entry

This allows the Passive Entry feature to be turned on or off.

Press SELECT when Passive Entry is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Remote Left In Vehicle

This allows the Remote Left In Vehicle reminder feature to be turned on or off. If on, the horn will chirp if a remote is left in the vehicle.

Press SELECT when Remote Left In Vehicle is highlighted. Turn the Menu knob to select On or Off. Press SELECT to confirm the selection. Press ⇦ BACK to move to the last menu.

Return to Factory Settings

Select Return to Factory Settings to return all of the vehicle personalization to the default settings. Turn the Menu knob to select Yes or No. Press SELECT to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Universal Remote System

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-22* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

Universal Remote System Programming

If the vehicle has this feature, you will see these buttons with one LED indicator next to them in the overhead console.

This system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Do not use the Universal Remote system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1,1982.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Universal Remote system. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist with programming the Universal Remote system.

Keep the original hand-held transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future Universal Remote system programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed Universal Remote system buttons be erased for security purposes. See “Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons” later in this section.

When programming a garage door, park outside of the garage. Park directly in line with and facing the garage door opener motor-head or gate motor-head. Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate being programmed.

It is recommended that a new battery be installed in the hand-held transmitter for quicker and more accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

Programming the Universal Remote System

For questions or help programming the Universal Remote system, call 1-800-355-3515 or go to www.homelink.com.

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before starting. Otherwise, the device will time out and the procedure will have to be repeated.

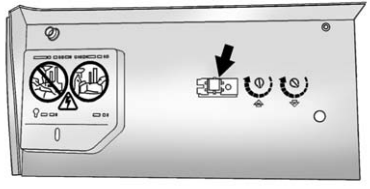
To program up to three devices:

1. Hold the end of the hand-held transmitter about 3 to 8 cm (1 to 3 in) away from the Universal Remote system buttons while keeping the indicator light in view. The hand-held transmitter was supplied by the manufacturer of the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit).
2. At the same time, press and hold both the hand-held transmitter button and one of the three Universal Remote system buttons to be used to operate the garage door. Do not release the Universal Remote system button or the hand-held transmitter button until the indicator light changes from a slowly to a rapidly flashing light. You now may release both buttons.

   Some entry gates and garage door openers may require substitution of Step 2 with the procedure noted in “Gate Operator and Canadian Programming” later in this section.

3. Press and hold for five seconds the newly trained Universal Remote system button (the button selected in Step 2) while observing the indicator light and garage door activation.
   - If the indicator light stays on continuously or the garage door starts to move when the Universal Remote system button is pressed and released, then the programming is complete. There is no need to continue programming Steps 4 through 6.
   - If the Universal Remote system indicator light blinks rapidly for two seconds, then turns to a constant light and the garage door does not move, continue with programming Steps 4 through 6.

     It may be helpful to have another person assist with the remaining Steps 4 through 6.



“Learn” or “Smart” Button

4. After Steps 1 through 3 have been completed, locate the “Learn” or “Smart” button inside the garage on the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.
5. Firmly press and release the “Learn” or “Smart” button. After pressing this button, you will have 30 seconds to complete Step 6.
6. Immediately return to the vehicle. Firmly press and hold for two seconds the Universal Remote system button, selected in Step 2 to control the garage door, and then release it. If the garage door does not move or the lamp on the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) does not flash, press and hold the same button a second time for two seconds, and then release it. Again, if the door does not move or the garage door lamp does not flash, press and hold the same button a third time for two seconds, and then release.

The Universal Remote system should now activate the garage door.

To program the remaining two Universal Remote system buttons, begin with Step 1 of “Programming the Universal Remote System.”

Gate Operator and Canadian Programming

If you have questions or need help programming the Universal Remote system, call 1-800-355-3515 or go to www.homelink.com.

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out or quit after several seconds of transmission. This may not be long enough for the Universal Remote system to pick up the signal during programming. Similarly, some U.S. gate operators are manufactured to time out in the same manner.

If you live in Canada, or you are having difficulty programming a gate operator or garage door opener by using the “Programming the Universal Remote System” procedures, regardless of where you live, replace Step 2 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” with the following:

Continue to press and hold the Universal Remote system button while you press and release every two seconds (cycle) the hand-held transmitter button until the frequency signal has been successfully accepted by the Universal Remote system. The Universal Remote system indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly. Proceed with Step 3 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” to complete.

Universal Remote System Operation

Using the Universal Remote System

Press and hold the appropriate Universal Remote system button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons

All programmed buttons should be erased when the vehicle is sold or the lease ends.

To erase all programmed buttons on the Universal Remote system device:

1. Press and hold down the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. This should take about 10 seconds.
2. Release both buttons.

Reprogramming a Single Universal Remote System Button

To reprogram any of the three Universal Remote system buttons:

1. Press and hold the desired Universal Remote system button. Do not release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, proceed with Step 1 of the section “Programming the Universal Remote System.”

If you have questions or need help programming the Universal Remote system, call 1-800-355-3515 or go to www.homelink.com. You may also call the customer assistance phone number under *Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-5* or *Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) on page 13-5*.

✍ NOTES

Lighting

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 6-2
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 6-2
Flash-to-Pass 6-2
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Automatic Headlamp System 6-3
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) 6-3
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-4
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-4
Fog Lamps 6-5

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 6-5
Dome Lamps 6-6
Reading Lamps 6-6
Sun Visor Lamps 6-6

Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 6-7
Exit Lighting 6-7
Battery Load Management 6-7
Battery Power Protection 6-8

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

The exterior lamp control is located on the instrument panel on the outboard side of the steering wheel.

Turn the control to the following positions:

⏻ **(Off):** Turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released. Turn to off again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

AUTO (Automatic): Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

(Parking Lamps): Turns on the parking lamps together with the following:

- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

(Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps together with the following:

- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights
- Parking Lamps

Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

A warning chime sounds if the driver door is opened while the ignition is off and the exterior lamps are on.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

(Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer): Push the turn signal/ lane change lever away from you and release, to turn the high beams on. To return to low beams, push the lever again or pull it toward you and release.

This indicator light turns on in the instrument panel cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

Flash-to-Pass

To flash the high beams, pull the turn signal/lane change lever toward you, and release.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system turns on the low-beam headlamps at a reduced brightness. For vehicles with High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlamps, the dedicated DRL will come on when all of the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamps control is in AUTO.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.
- The parking brake is released or the vehicle is not in P (Park).

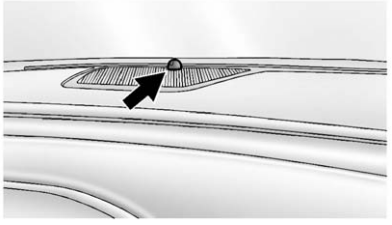
When the DRL are on, the low-beam headlamps will be on. The taillamps, sidemarker lamps, instrument panel lights, and other lamps will not be on.

The DRL turn off when the headlamps are turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

This vehicle may have a DRL disabling function. When the DRL are on and a turn signal is activated, the DRL on that side will be off until the turn signal goes off.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



There is a light sensor located on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

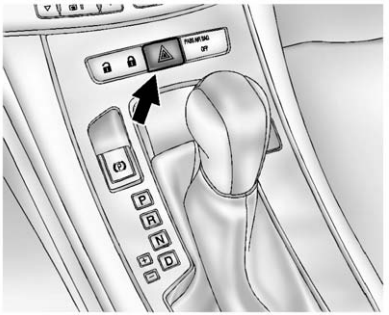
When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off or may change to Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)

The Adaptive Forward Lighting System (AFL) pivots the headlamps horizontally to provide greater road illumination while turning. To enable AFL, set the exterior lamp switch to the AUTO position. Moving the switch out of the AUTO position deactivates the system. AFL operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 3 km/h (2 mph). AFL does not operate when the transmission is in R (Reverse). AFL is not immediately operable after starting the vehicle; driving a short distance is required to calibrate the AFL. See *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

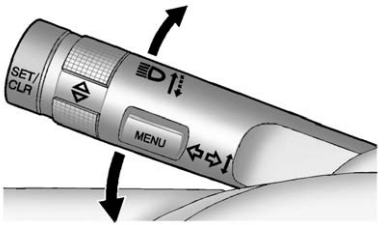
Hazard Warning Flashers



⚠ **Hazard Warning Flasher:** Press this button to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers turn on automatically if the airbags deploy.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument panel cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is completed. If the lever is briefly pressed and released, the turn signal flashes three times.

The turn and lane-change signal can be turned off manually by moving the lever back to its original position.

If after signaling a turn or lane change the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb might be burned out.

Have the bulbs replaced. If the bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 10-38*.

Fog Lamps

For vehicles with fog lamps, the button is located on the exterior lamp control, left of the steering wheel.

To turn on the fog lamps, the ignition and the headlamps or parking lamps must be on.

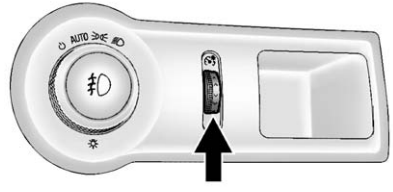
If the fog lamps are turned on while the exterior lamp switch is in the AUTO position, the headlamps come on automatically.

: Press to turn on or off. An indicator light on the instrument panel cluster comes on when the fog lamps are on.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

Interior Lighting

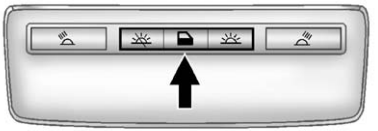
Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The brightness of the instrument panel lighting and steering wheel controls can be adjusted.

(Instrument Panel Illumination): Move and hold the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the lights.

Dome Lamps



The interior lamps control located in the overhead console controls both the front and rear interior lamps.

To operate:

(Off): Turns the lamps off.

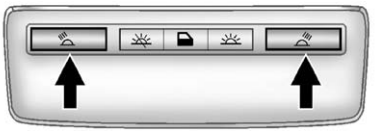
(Door): Turns the lamps on when any door is opened.

(On): Keeps the lamps on all the time.

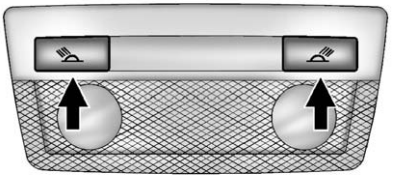
The interior lamps turn on automatically if the airbags are deployed.

Reading Lamps

There are front and rear reading lamps.



The front reading lamps are located in the overhead console.



The rear reading lamps are located in the headliner.

or : Press to turn each lamp on or off.

Sun Visor Lamps

This lamp turns on when the cover is opened.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

The headlamps, taillamps, license plate lamps, back-up lamps, dome lamps, and most of the interior lights turn on briefly when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) button is pressed, or when the door handle is pulled on a keyless access vehicle. See *Ignition Positions (Key Access) on page 9-18* or *Ignition Positions (Keyless Access) on page 9-20*. After about 30 seconds the exterior lamps turn off, then the dome lamps and remaining interior lights dim to off. Entry lighting can be disabled manually by changing the ignition out of the OFF position, or by pressing the RKE button.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Exit Lighting

The headlamps, taillamps, parking lamps, back-up lamps, and license plate lamps come on at night, or in areas with limited lighting, when the key is removed from the ignition. The dome lamps also come on when the key is removed from the ignition. The exterior lights and dome lamps remain on after the door is closed for a set amount of time, then automatically turn off.

For vehicles with keyless access, the exterior lights and dome lamps automatically turn on when a door is opened after the ignition is turned off. See *Ignition Positions (Key Access) on page 9-18* or *Ignition Positions (Keyless Access) on page 9-20*.

The exterior lights turn off immediately by turning the exterior lamps control off.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Battery Load Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM) that estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gauge or a voltage display on the Driver Information Center (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all of the power needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a DIC message might be displayed and it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *Battery Voltage and Charging Messages on page 5-35*.

Battery Power Protection

The battery saver feature is designed to protect the vehicle's battery.

If the exterior lamps or any interior light is left on and the ignition is turned off, the battery rundown protection system automatically turns the lamp off after about 10 minutes.

Infotainment System

Introduction
Infotainment 7-1
Theft-Deterrent Feature 7-2
Overview (Radio with CD) 7-3
Overview (Radio with CD/DVD and MEM) 7-5
Overview (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) 7-7
Operation 7-13

Radio
AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) 7-18
AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) 7-21
Satellite Radio 7-24
Radio Reception 7-26
Backglass Antenna 7-27
Satellite Radio Antenna 7-27

Audio Players
CD Player 7-28
CD/DVD Player 7-30
MP3 7-33
Mass Storage Media (MEM) 7-36
Auxiliary Devices (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) 7-39

Rear Seat Infotainment
Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System 7-47

Phone
Bluetooth (Overview) 7-57
Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) 7-59
Bluetooth (Voice Recognition) 7-63
Bluetooth (UHP Mexico Only) 7-69

Trademarks and License Agreements
Trademarks and License Agreements 7-80

Introduction

Infotainment

Read the following pages to become familiar with the audio system's features.

⚠ WARNING

Taking your eyes off the road for extended periods could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to you or others. Do not give extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving.

This system provides access to many audio and non-audio listings.

To minimize taking your eyes off the road while driving, do the following while the vehicle is parked:

- Become familiar with the operation and controls of the audio system.
- Set up the tone, speaker adjustments, and preset radio stations.

For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 9-3*.

Notice: **Contact your dealer before adding any equipment.**

Adding audio or communication equipment could interfere with the operation of the engine, radio, or other systems, and could damage them. Follow federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone equipment.

The vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-27* for more information.

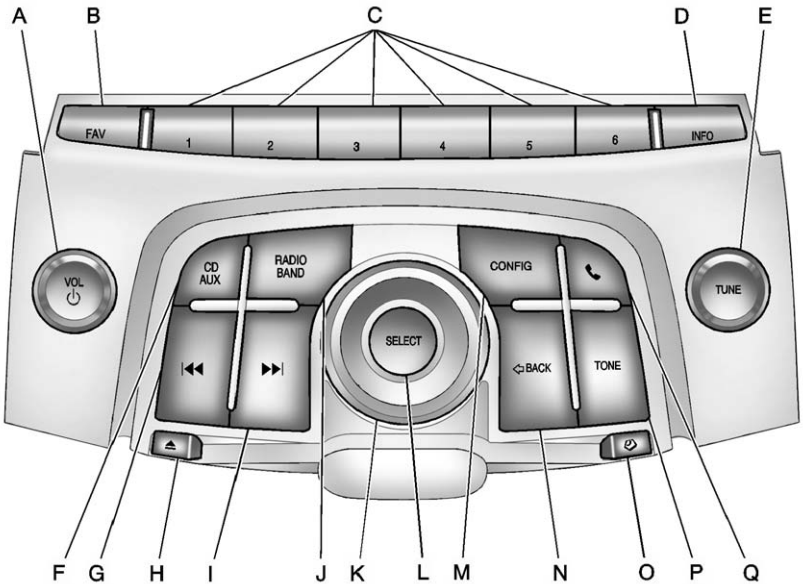
Navigation System

For vehicles with a navigation system, see the separate navigation manual.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The theft-deterrent feature works by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) to the infotainment system. The infotainment system does not operate if it is stolen or moved to a different vehicle.

Overview (Radio with CD)



A. VOL/ ⏻
- Turns the system on or off and adjusts the volume.

B. FAV
- Opens the favorites list.

C. Buttons 1 to 6
- Saves and selects favorite stations.

D. INFO
- Radio: Shows available information about the current station.
- CD: Shows available information about the current track.

E. TUNE
- Radio: Manually selects radio stations.
- CD: Selects tracks.

F. CD/AUX
- Selects the CD player or an external audio source.

G. ⏮

- Radio: Seeks the previous station.
- CD: Select the previous track or rewinds within a track.

H. ⏏

- Removes a disc from the CD slot.

I. ⏭

- Radio: Seeks the next station.
- CD: Select the next track or fast forwards within a track.

J. RADIO/BAND

- Changes the band while listening to the radio.
- Selects the radio when listening to a different audio source.

K. Menu Knob

- Opens menus, highlights menu items, or sets numeric values while in a menu.

L. SELECT

- Selects menu items.

M. CONFIG

- Opens the Settings menu.

N. ⇦ BACK

- Menu: Moves one level back.
- Character Input: Deletes the last character.

O. ◷

- Opens the Clock menu.

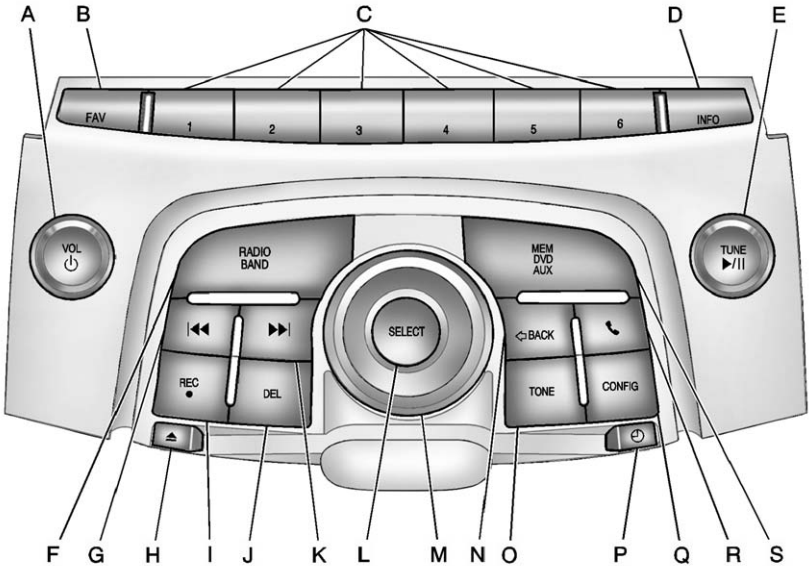
P. TONE

- Opens the Tone menu.

Q. ☎

- Opens the Phone main menu.
- Mutes the audio system.

Overview (Radio with CD/DVD and MEM)



A. VOL/ ⏻

- Turns the system on or off and adjusts the volume.

B. FAV

- Radio: Opens the favorites list.
- MEM: Opens the favorites list.

C. Buttons 1 to 6

- Radio: Saves and selects favorite stations.
- MEM: Saves and selects favorite tracks and playlists.

D. INFO

- Radio: Shows available information about the current station.
- CD: Shows available information about the current track.

E. TUNE/ ▶/II

- Manually selects radio stations and pauses time shifted content.
- CD/DVD: Select tracks, pauses playback, and stops playback.
- MEM: Select tracks and pauses playback.

F. RADIO/BAND

- Changes the band while listening to the radio.
- Selects the radio when listening to a different audio source.

G. ⏮

- Radio: Seeks the previous station.
- CD: Selects the previous track or rewinds within a track.
- MEM: Selects the previous track or rewinds within a track.

H. ⏏

- Removes a disc from the CD/DVD slot.

I. REC ●

- AUX: Records content from audio CDs, MP3/WMA CDs, and USB mass storage devices.

J. DEL

- MEM: Deletes the current track from MEM.

K. ⏭

- Radio: Seeks the next station.
- CD: Selects the next track or fast forwards within a track.
- MEM: Selects the next track or fast forwards within a track.

L. SELECT

- Selects menu items.

M. Menu Knob

- Opens menus, highlights menu items, or sets numeric values while in a menu.

N. ⇦ BACK

- Menu: Moves one level back.
- Character Input: Deletes the last character.

O. TONE

- Opens the Tone menu.

P. ◷

- Opens the Clock menu.

Q. CONFIG

- Opens the Settings menu.

R. ☎

- Opens the Phone main menu.
- Mutes the audio system.

S. MEM/DVD/AUX

- Selects MEM (Memory), CD/DVD, USB, or a connected front or rear auxiliary audio source.

Overview (Radio with CD and Touchscreen)

For vehicles equipped with the MyLink® or IntelliLink® infotainment system, see the separate MyLink/IntelliLink Features and Functions Guide for more information.

Keeping your eyes on the road and your mind on the drive is important for safe driving. The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help with this by disabling some features when driving. A grayed-out function is not available when the vehicle is moving.

All functions are available when the vehicle is parked. Do the following before driving:

- Become familiar with the infotainment system operation, buttons on the faceplate, and touch-sensitive screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by presetting favorite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or a single voice command for vehicles equipped with phone capability.

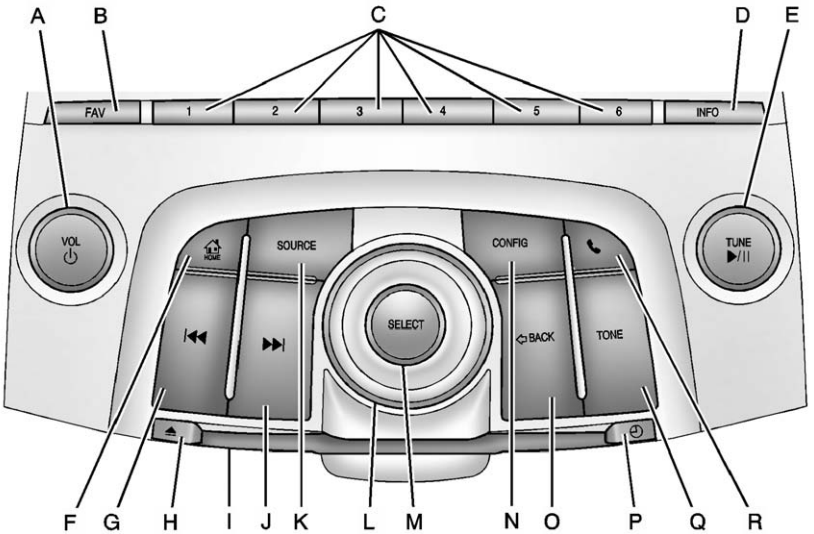
⚠ WARNING

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often while using the navigation system could cause a crash and you or others could be injured or killed. Focus your attention on driving and limit glances at the moving map on the navigation screen. Use voice guidance whenever possible.

Infotainment System Overview

The infotainment system is controlled by using the buttons on the faceplate and the touch screen.

See “Infotainment Control Buttons” in this section for more information.



A. VOL/ ⏻ (Volume/Power)
B. FAV (Favorites)
C. Buttons 1 to 6
D. INFO (Information)
E. TUNE / ▶/II (Tune/Play/Pause)
F. ⌂ /HOME (Home Page)
G. ⏮ (Seek Down)
H. ⏏ (Eject)
I. CD Slot
J. ⏭ (Seek Up)
K. SOURCE
L. Menu Knob
M. SELECT
N. CONFIG (Configuration Menu)
O. ⇦ BACK
P. ◴ (Clock Menu)

Q. TONE

R. (Phone menu)

Infotainment Control Buttons

The buttons on the faceplate are used to start primary functions while using the infotainment system.

VOL/ (Volume/Power):

1. Press to turn the system on and off.
2. Turn to adjust the volume.

TUNE / (Tune/Play/Pause):

Press TUNE / to start, pause, and resume playback. Turn to manually change radios stations. See *CD Player on page 7-28* and *MP3 on page 7-33* for more information.

SOURCE: Press to change the audio sources such as AM-FM Radio, XM™ (if equipped), CD, and AUX.

TONE: Press to access the sound menu screen to adjust bass, midrange, and treble. See *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21* for more information.

INFO (Information): Press to toggle through an audio information screen.

CONFIG (Configure): Press to adjust features for radio, display, phone, vehicle, and time.

/HOME (Home): See “Home Page” following in this section.

MENU/SEL: Turn to highlight a feature. Press to activate the highlighted feature.

(Phone): See *Bluetooth (Overview) on page 7-57* or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) on page 7-59* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition) on page 7-63* or *Bluetooth (UHP Mexico Only) on page 7-69* for more information.

BACK: Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.

If on a page accessed directly by a faceplate button or Home Page screen button, pressing BACK will go to the previous menu.

FAV (Favorite Pages 1-6): Press to display the current page number above the preset buttons. The stored stations for each list display on the touch-sensitive preset buttons at the bottom of the screen. The number of preset FAV lists can be changed in the Configuration Menu.

(Seek Down):

1. Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, it seeks the previous track. If longer than five seconds, the current track starts from the beginning.
2. Press and hold to fast forward through a track.

3. Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. See *CD Player on page 7-28* and *MP3 on page 7-33* for more information.
4. For AM, FM, or XM (if equipped), press to seek to the next strong station.

Preset Buttons (1-6): The preset buttons numbered one through six can be used to select stored AM, FM, and XM (if equipped) stations.

(Clock Menu): Press to set the time.

(Eject): Press to eject a disc from the CD player. See *CD Player on page 7-28*.

Touch Screen Buttons

Touch screen buttons are on the screen and highlighted when a feature is available. Some toggle screen buttons highlight when active and gray out when inactive.

Home Page

The infotainment system displays a home page that makes accessing many of the features an easy process.

Back: If on page two of the Home Page, press Back to return to page one of the Home Page. If on page one, Back serves no function.

Home: While navigating through other menus, press to go back to the Home Page to start a different feature.

FAV: Press to display a page of stored (favorite) AM, FM, or XM (if equipped) stations. Keep pressing FAV to scroll through the favorite pages.

The Home Page Menu lists the options Customize Home Page and Restore Home Page Defaults.

Out of all available Home Page icons, up to eight icons can be selected and sorted for the first Home Page screen.

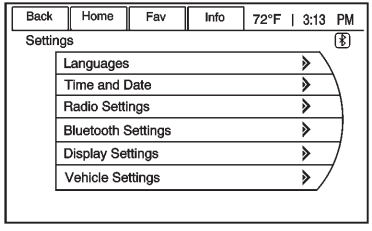
Home Page Features

Various functions are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

Press the Now Playing screen button to display the active source page. The sources available are AM, FM, XM (if equipped), CD, USB/iPod, and AUX.

See *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21*, *Satellite Radio on page 7-24*, and *CD Player on page 7-28*.

Press the Phone screen button to display the Phone main page. See *Bluetooth (Overview) on page 7-57* or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) on page 7-59* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition) on page 7-63* or *Bluetooth (UHP Mexico Only) on page 7-69*.



Press the Config screen button to display the Config main page. From this display, you can adjust features such as time and date, radio, phone, vehicle, and display.

Press the Tone screen button to display the Tone main page. Adjust the tone and speakers by pressing the screen buttons to change the levels of sound for treble, midrange, bass, fade, and balance. See *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21*.

Press the FM screen button to display the FM main page and play the current or last tuned FM station. See *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21*.

Press the AM screen button to display the AM main page and play the current or last tuned AM station. See *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21*.

Press the XM screen button (if equipped) to display the XM main page and play the current or last tuned XM channel. See *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21* and *Satellite Radio on page 7-24*.

Press the CD screen button to display the CD main page and play the current or last CD track selected. See *CD Player on page 7-28*.

Press the USB screen button to display the USB main page and play the current or last track selected. See *Auxiliary Devices (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-39*.

Press the AUX screen button to access any connected auxiliary device. See *Auxiliary Devices (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-39*.

Time and Date Settings

From the Time & Date Settings screen button, press to display the Time & Date Settings menu.

Set Time: Press the up or down arrows to increase or decrease the Hours and Minutes displayed on the clock.

Set Date: Press the up or down arrows to increase or decrease the day.

Set Time Format: Press the 12 Hours screen button for standard time; press the 24 Hours screen button for military time.

Set Date Format: Depending on the region, the following date formats may be available: MM/DD/YYYY, DD.MM.YYYY, or YYYY/MM/DD.

Display Digital Clock: Press Display to turn the display of the clock on the screen On or Off.

Radio Settings

Press the Config button on the Home Page or the CONFIG button on the faceplate to enter the menu options. Turn the MENU knob or touch-tap the scroll bar to scroll through the available options. Press the MENU knob or press Radio Settings to display the radio settings menu. Press this feature to make changes for radio information displayed, preset pages, Auto Volume Control, and XM Categories Restore. See *Satellite Radio on page 7-24* (if equipped), for more information about XM Categories.

The Radio Settings are:

Speed Dependent Volume: Select OFF, Low, Medium, or High sensitivity to automatically adjust the volume to minimize the effects of unwanted background noise that can result from changing road surfaces, driving speeds, or open windows. This feature works best at lower volume settings where background noise is typically louder than the sound system volume.

Startup Volume: Press to set the maximum volume level for startup that will be used even if a higher volume had been set when the radio was turned off.

Radio Favorites: Press to select the number of FAV pages to be used in the system.

Add/Remove XM Categories: Press to customize which available XM Categories are used and displayed in the system.

See *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21* for more information.

Phone Settings

See *Bluetooth (Overview) on page 7-57* or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) on page 7-59* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition) on page 7-63* or *Bluetooth (UHP Mexico Only) on page 7-69* in the “Phone” section for more information on phone settings.

Vehicle Settings

See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information.

Display Settings

Press the Config button on the Home Page or the CONFIG button on the faceplate, then select Display Settings from the list.

The following options may display:

Dimming Mode: Press to change the screen background. The Automatic setting adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.

To change the overall brightness setting for the display, use the vehicle interior lighting instrument panel illumination control.

Languages

The vehicle supports English, French (Canadian), and Spanish. The default language is English.

To change the display language, see *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information.

English and Metric Unit Conversion

To change the display units between English and metric units, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27* for more information.

Cleaning the Display

Notice: **Using abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces could scratch the glass. Use only a soft cloth and do not spray cleaner directly on the system as it could affect the mechanical parts.**

Do not wipe the panel with a hard cloth or use a volatile liquid such as paint thinner; it could scratch the surface or erase the characters on the buttons.

Operation

Controls

The infotainment system is operated by using the pushbuttons, multifunction knobs, menus shown on the display, and steering wheel controls, if equipped.

Turning the System On or Off

VOL/ ⏻ (Volume/Power): Press to turn the system on and off.

Automatic Switch-Off

If the infotainment system has been turned on after the ignition is turned off, the system will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

Volume Control

VOL/ ⏻ (Volume/Power): Turn to adjust the volume.

☎ (Phone/Mute): For vehicles with OnStar®, press and hold ☎ to mute the infotainment system. Press and hold ☎ again, or turn the VOL/ ⏻ knob to cancel mute.

For vehicles without OnStar®, press ☎ to mute the infotainment system. Press ☎ again, or turn the VOL/ ⏻ knob to cancel mute.

Menu System

Controls

The Menu knob, SELECT button, and ⇦ BACK button are used to navigate the menu system.

Menu Knob:

Turn to:

- Enter the menu system.
- Highlight a menu option.
- Select a value.

SELECT:

Press to:

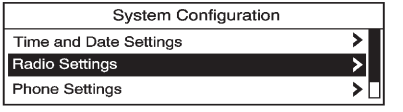
- Select or activate the highlighted menu option.
- Confirm a set value.
- Turn a system setting on or off.

⇦ BACK:

Press to:

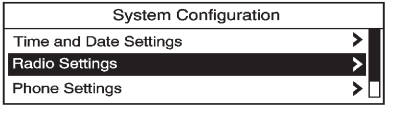
- Exit a menu.
- Return from a submenu screen to the previous menu screen.
- Delete the last character in a sequence.

Selecting a Menu Option



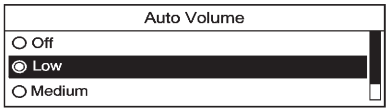
1. Turn the Menu knob to move the highlighted bar.
2. Press SELECT to select the highlighted option.

Submenus



An arrow on the right-hand edge of the menu indicates that it has a submenu with other options.

Activating a Setting

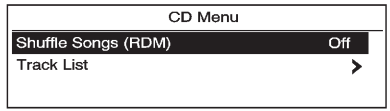


1. Turn the Menu knob to highlight the setting.
2. Press SELECT to activate the setting.

Setting a Value

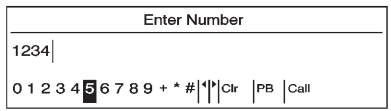
1. Turn the Menu knob to change the current value of the setting.
2. Press SELECT to confirm the setting.

Turning a Function On or Off



1. Turn the Menu knob to highlight the function.
2. Press SELECT to turn the function on or off.

Entering a Character Sequence



1. Turn the Menu knob to highlight the character.
2. Press SELECT to select the character.

Press the ⇦ BACK button to delete the last character in the sequence or press and hold to delete the entire character sequence.

Audio Settings

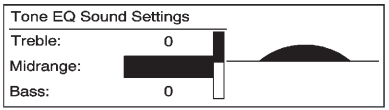
The audio settings can be set for each radio band and each audio player source.

To quickly reset an audio setting value to 0:

1. Press the TONE button.
2. Select the audio setting.
3. Press and hold the SELECT button until the value changes to 0.

Press the ⇦ BACK button to go back to the Tone Settings menu.

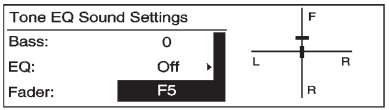
Adjusting the Treble, Midrange, and Bass



1. Press the TONE button.
2. Select Treble, Midrange, or Bass.
3. Select the value.

Press the ⇦ BACK button to go back to the Tone Settings menu.

Adjusting the Fader and Balance



1. Press the TONE button.
2. Select Fader or Balance.
3. Select the value.

Press the ⇦ BACK button to go back to the Tone Settings menu.

Adjusting the EQ (Equalizer)

For vehicles with an equalizer:

1. Press the TONE button.
2. Select EQ.
3. Select the setting.

Press the ⇦ BACK button to go back to the Tone Settings menu.

DSP (Digital Signal Processing) Settings

For vehicles with DSP, it is used to provide a choice of different listening experiences.

The DSP settings for the radio with CD are:

- *normal* - Select this setting to adjust the audio for stereo mode. This provides the best sound quality for the driver seat first, with the front passenger second.
- *hk surround* - Select to enable hk surround. This produces a true 6.1 matrix surround from any two channel digital source. This feature is not available in AM/FM radio mode.

The DSP settings for the radio with CD/DVD and MEM are:

- *2.0 normal* - Select this setting to adjust the audio for stereo mode. This provides the best sound quality for the driver seat first, with the front passenger second.
- *hk surround* - Select to enable hk surround. This produces a true 6.1 matrix surround from any two channel digital source. This feature is not available in AM/FM radio mode.

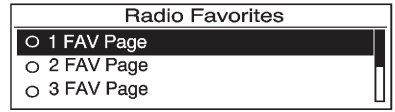
To adjust the DSP settings:

1. Press the TONE button.
2. Select DSP.
3. Select the setting.

Press the ⇦ BACK button to go back to the Tone Settings menu.

System Settings

Configuring the Number of Favorite Pages



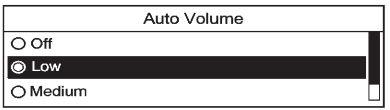
To configure the number of available favorite pages:

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Radio Settings.
3. Select Radio Favorites.
4. Select the number of available favorite pages.
5. Press the ⇦ BACK button to go back to the System Configuration menu.

Auto Volume

The auto volume feature automatically adjusts the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise as the vehicle speeds up or slows down, so that the volume level is consistent.

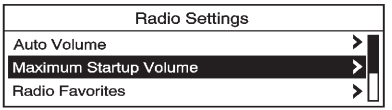
The level of volume compensation can be selected, or the auto volume feature can be turned off.



1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Radio Settings.
3. Select Auto Volume.
4. Select the setting.
5. Press the ⇦ BACK button to go back to the System Configuration menu.

Maximum Startup Volume

The maximum volume played when the radio with CD is first turned on can be set.



1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Radio Settings.
3. Select Maximum Startup Volume.
4. Select the setting.
5. Press the ⇦ BACK button to go back to the System Configuration menu.

Radio

AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM)

Control Buttons(radio with CD and Radio with CD/DVD/MEM)

The buttons used to control the radio are:

RADIO/BAND: Press to turn the radio on and choose between AM, FM, and XM™, if equipped.

Menu Knob: Turn to navigate the available menus.

TUNE: Turn to search for stations.

INFO: Press to display additional information that may be available for the current song.

⏮ / ⏭ : Press to search for stations.

FAV: Press to open the favorites list and select the favorites page.

1 to 6: Press to select preset stations.

▶/II (Play/Pause): Press to pause time shifted content, if equipped.

RDS (Radio Data System)

The radio may have RDS. The RDS feature is available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. This feature only works when the information from the radio station is available. In rare cases, a radio station could broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While the radio is tuned to an FM-RDS station, the station name or call letters display.

Radio Menus

Radio menus are available for AM, FM, and XM, if equipped.

Turn the Menu knob to open the main radio menu for that band.

Selecting a Band

Press the RADIO/BAND button to choose AM, FM, or XM, if equipped. The last station that was playing starts playing again.

Selecting a Station

Seek Tuning

If the radio station is not known:

Briefly press ⏮ or ⏭ to automatically search for the next available station. If a station is not found, the radio switches to a more sensitive search level. If a station still is not found, the frequency that was last active begins to play.

If the radio station is known:

Press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ until the station on the display is reached, then release the button.

Manual Tuning

Turn the TUNE knob to select the frequency on the display.

Favorites List

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Favorites List.
3. Select the station.

Station Lists

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select AM or FM Station List. All receivable stations in the current reception area are displayed. If a station list has not been created, an automatic station search is done.
3. Select the station.

Category Lists

Most stations that broadcast an RDS program type code specify the type of programming transmitted. Some stations change the program type code depending on the content. The system stores the RDS stations sorted by program type in the FM category list.

To search for a programming type determined by station:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select FM category list. A list of all programming types available displays.
3. Select the programming type. A list of stations that transmit programming of the selected type displays.
4. Select the station.

   The category lists are updated when the station lists are updated.

Updating Station & Category Lists

If stations stored in the station list can no longer be received:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Update AM or FM Station List, if the stations stored in the station list are no longer received. A station search will be completed and the first station in the updated list will play.

To cancel the station search, press SELECT.

Storing a Station as a Favorite

Stations from all bands can be stored in any order in the favorite pages.

Up to six stations can be stored in each favorite page and the number of available favorite pages can be set.

Storing Stations

To store the station to a position in the list, press the corresponding button 1 to 6 until a beep is heard.

Retrieving Stations

Press the FAV button to open a favorite page or to switch to another favorite page. Briefly press one of the 1 to 6 buttons to retrieve the station.

Time Shifting (Radio with CD/DVD and MEM)

The radio with MEM time shift feature can rewind 20 minutes of FM/AM content. While listening to the radio, the content from the current station is always being buffered.

Press ▶/II to pause the radio. The radio displays the time shift status bar. The status bar shows the amount of content stored in the buffer and the current pause point.

To resume playback from the current pause point, press ▶/II again. The radio is no longer live, but played from the time shift buffer. A status bar displays below the station number.

Press and hold ⏭ or ⏮ to fast forward or rewind through the time shift buffer. Hold ⏭ until the end of the recorded buffer resumes live playback.

Press and release ⏭ or ⏮ to jump forward or back 30 seconds in the time shift buffer.

When the radio station is changed, the buffer is cleared and automatically restarted for the current station. Content from a previously tuned station is no longer available.

The time shift feature is not available while recording or with other sources of playback.

Pausing AM/FM with the Vehicle Turned Off

If AM/FM is paused when the vehicle is turned off, the radio continues to buffer the current radio station for up to 20 minutes. If the vehicle is turned back on within 20 minutes, the radio resumes playback from the paused point.

AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen)

Playing the Radio

For vehicles equipped with the MyLink or IntelliLink infotainment system, see the separate MyLink/IntelliLink Features and Functions Guide for more information.

Audio Source

VOL/ ⏻ (Volume/Power):

1. Press to turn the radio on or off.
2. Turn to increase or decrease the volume of the active source (i.e., current audio source, active navigation voice guidance, or traffic prompts).

The steering wheel controls can also be used to adjust the volume. See “Steering Wheel Controls” in the vehicle owner manual for more information.

To access the radio main page, press the SOURCE button on the faceplate, the Now Playing screen button, or one of the audio screen buttons on the Home Page.

While on the audio main page, press the Source button repeatedly to display and cycle through the available sources (AM, FM, and XM (if equipped), CD, USB/iPod, and AUX).

Infotainment System Menus

Tone Settings

To access the tone settings, press the Home Page Tone button or the TONE button on the faceplate.

Use the tone settings to adjust the following features:

- Setting the tone
- Adjusting the speakers

Setting the Tone

To adjust the tone:

- Treble: Touch Treble and then press + or − to change the level.
- Middle (Midrange): Touch Middle and then press + or − to change the level.
- Bass: Touch Bass and then press + or − to change the level.

Adjusting the Speakers

To adjust the speaker balance:

- Press the left arrow on the bottom for more sound from the left speakers or the right arrow on the bottom for more sound from the right speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the left and right speakers.

To adjust the speaker fade:

- Press the upper arrow for more sound from the front speakers and the lower arrow for more sound from the rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.

EQ Settings

The EQ settings are selected through the tone menu. Press the left or right arrows to cycle through the EQ options. The available choices are Pop, Rock, Jazz, Classical, and Talk.

Finding a Station

To select the band, see “Audio Source” earlier in this section.

Turn the Menu knob to find a radio station. To select a preset station, touch the FAV button and choose a preset button.

Seeking a Station

Press ⏮ or ⏭ to search for a station.

AM

1. Press the AM screen button on the Home Page or select AM from the source pop-up to display the AM main page.
2. From the AM screen, press the Menu screen button to display the AM stations.
3. Press to select the desired option. To update the station list, touch Refresh.

FM

1. Press the FM screen button on the Home Page or select FM from the source pop-up to display the FM main page.
2. From the FM screen, press the Menu screen button to display the FM stations.
3. Press to select the desired option. To update the station list, touch Refresh.

XM (If Equipped)

1. Press the XM screen button on the Home Page or select XM from the source pop-up to display the XM main page.
2. From the XM screen, press the Menu screen button to display the XM categories.
3. Touch a desired category and then turn the TUNE/MENU knob to scroll the station list.

Changing the Sources

To change audio sources from any of the audio main pages (AM, FM, XM, CD, USB/iPod, or AUX), press the SOURCE button on the faceplate or the Source screen button to display a pop-up of available audio sources. Touch-tap or press the SOURCE button on the faceplate repeatedly to change the desired source.

Storing Radio Station Presets

There are a few ways to store presets.

Up to 36 preset stations can be stored. AM, FM, and XM, if equipped, can be mixed.

1. From the AM, FM, or XM main page, press and hold one of the preset screen buttons located at the bottom of the screen. After a few seconds, a beep will be heard and the new preset information will display on that screen button.
2. Touch and hold a preset button to store the currently active station. After a few seconds, a beep will be heard and the new preset information will display on a small pop-up display at the bottom of the screen.
3. Repeat the steps for each preset.

To change the number of preset pages, see “Mixed-Band Presets” following for more information.

Recalling a Preset Station

To recall a preset station from a FAV page, do the following:

- Press the FAV button on the faceplate to display the FAV pop-up. Select the desired preset from the pop-up.
- Press the FAV screen button at the top bar to display the preset pop-up that appears at the bottom of the page. Press one of the preset screen buttons to go to the selected preset station.

- In the AM, FM, or XM (if equipped) main page, press one of the preset screen buttons to go to the selected preset station.

Mixed-Band Presets

Each page can store six preset stations. The presets within a page can be from different radio bands.

To scroll through the pages, press the FAV button located on the faceplate or the FAV screen button on the top bar. The current page number displays above the preset buttons. The stored stations for each FAV page display on the preset buttons at the bottom of the screen. The number of FAV pages displayed can be changed in the Radio Settings in the Configuration Menu.

Satellite Radio

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

For vehicles equipped with the MyLink or IntelliLink infotainment system, see the separate MyLink/IntelliLink Features and Functions Guide for more information.

Vehicles with an XM satellite radio tuner and an XM satellite radio subscription can receive XM programming.

XM is a satellite radio service based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM satellite radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast to coast, and in digital-quality sound. A service fee is required to receive the XM service. For more information, see www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S. In Canada, see www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677.

When XM is active, the channel name and number, category name, song title, and artist display on the screen.

XM Categories (Radio with CD)

XM stations are organized in categories.

Removing or Adding Categories

1. Press the CONFIG button. Turn the Menu knob until Radio displays. Press SELECT or press Radio to display the radio settings menu.
2. Select the Show/Hide XM Categories screen button.
3. Press the category buttons on the screen to show or hide the category.

XM Categories (Radio with CD and Touchscreen)

Adding or Removing Categories

1. From the Home Page press the Config screen button or the CONFIG button on the infotainment system.
2. Select Radio Settings from the Config Menu list.
3. Select Add/Remove XM Categories.
4. From the Add/Remove XM Categories screen, select or deselect any category to be used in XM mode. A checkmark will indicate that the category is selected.

Turning XM Album Art On or Off

1. From the Home Page press the Config screen button or the CONFIG button on the infotainment system.
2. Select Radio Settings from the Config Menu list.
3. Select XM Album Art to turn on or off.

XM Messages

XL (Explicit Language Channels): These channels, or any others, can be blocked by request, by calling 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S., and 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

XM Updating: The encryption code in the receiver is being updated. No action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.

Loading XM: The audio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.

Channel Off Air: This channel is not currently in service. Tune in to another channel.

Channel Unauth: This channel is blocked or cannot be received with your XM subscription package.

Channel Unavailable: This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station.

No Artist Info: The system is working properly. No artist information is available at this time on this channel.

No Title Info: The system is working properly. No song title information is available at this time on this channel.

No CAT Info: The system is working properly. No category information is available at this time on this channel.

No Information: The system is working properly. No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel.

No XM Signal: The system is working properly. The vehicle may be in a location where the XM signal is being blocked. When the vehicle is moved into an open area, the signal should return.

CAT Not Found: The system is working properly. There are no channels available for the selected category.

XM Radio ID: If tuned to channel 0, this message alternates with the XM radio eight-digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.

Unknown: If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there could be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer.

Check Antenna: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer.

XM Not Available: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as cellular phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM satellite radio service gives digital radio reception from coast to coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the XM signal for a period of time.

Cellular Phone Usage

Cellular phone usage may cause interference with the vehicle's radio. This interference may occur when making or receiving phone calls, charging the phone's battery, or simply having the phone on. This interference can cause an increased level of static while listening to the radio. If static is received while listening to the radio, unplug the cellular phone and turn it off.

Backglass Antenna

The AM-FM antenna is integrated with the rear window defogger, located in the rear window. Make sure that the inside surface of the rear window is not scratched and that the lines on the glass are not damaged. If the inside surface is damaged, it could interfere with radio reception. For proper radio reception, the antenna connector needs to be properly attached to the post on the glass.

If a cellular telephone antenna needs to be attached to the glass, make sure that the grid lines for the AM-FM antenna are not damaged. There is enough space between the grid lines to attach a cellular telephone antenna without interfering with radio reception.

Notice: **Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window can damage the rear window antenna and/or the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not clear the inside rear window with sharp objects.**

Notice: **Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to your backglass antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Satellite Radio Antenna

For vehicles with XM satellite radio service, the antenna is located on the roof of the vehicle. Keep the antenna clear of obstructions for clear radio reception.

Audio Players

CD Player

For vehicles equipped with the MyLink or IntelliLink infotainment system, see the separate MyLink/IntelliLink Features and Functions Guide for more information.

The player can be used for CD and MP3s.

With the ignition on, insert a CD into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in and begins playing.

The vehicle must be in P (Park) for video to display.

The system is capable of playing:

- Most audio CDs
- CD-R
- CD-RW
- MP3 or unprotected WMA formats

When playing any compatible recordable disc, the sound quality can be reduced due to disc quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music or video that has been recorded, or the way the disc has been handled.

To avoid damage to the CD player:

- Do not use scratched or damaged discs
- Do not apply labels to discs. The labels could get caught in the player.
- Insert only one disc at a time.
- Keep the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids and debris.

If a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the disc using a marking pen.

Loading and Ejecting Discs

To load a disc:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Insert a disc into the slot. The player pulls it in the rest of the way. If the disc is damaged or improperly loaded, there is an error and the disc ejects.

The disc automatically plays once loaded.

Press ⏏ to eject a disc from the CD player.

Playing a CD

A disc must be loaded to select the source.

When a disc is loaded, the disc icon displays.

There are two ways to play a CD:

- Insert the disc and playback starts automatically.
- Press CD/AUX, MEM/DVD/AUX, or SOURCE repeatedly to select the disc source.

Playing an Audio CD

1. Press the CD screen button on the Home Page or select CD from the source pop-up to display the CD main page.
2. From the CD screen, press the Menu screen button to display the menu options.
3. Press to select the desired option.

On the CD main page a track number displays at the beginning of each track. Song, Artist, and Album information displays when available.

Use the following controls to play the disc:

▷ / ❚❚ (Play/Pause): Use to start, pause, or resume play.

⏮ (Seek Down):

- Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, it seeks to the previous track. If longer than five seconds, the current track starts from the beginning.
- Press and hold to fast reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭ (Seek Up):

- Press to seek to the next track.
- Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

SELECT: Turn to the right or left to select the next or previous track. Press this knob to select the menu. If a track is selected from the list, the system plays the track and returns to the CD screen.

Error Messages

If Disc Read Error displays and/or the disc comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- The disc has an invalid or unknown format.
- The disc is not from a correct region.
- The disc is very hot. Try the disc again when the temperature returns to normal.
- The road is very rough. Try the disc again when the road is smoother.
- The disc is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. Try the disc again later.
- There was a problem while burning the disc.
- The label is caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error continues, contact your dealer.

CD/DVD Player

The CD/DVD player can play CDs, DVD-As, MP3/WMA CDs, MP3/WMA DVDs, and DVD-Vs.

The CD/DVD player will not play 8 cm (3 in) discs.

Care of CDs and DVDs

Sound quality can be reduced due to disc quality, recording method, quality of the music recorded, and how the disc has been handled. Handle discs carefully and store them in their original cases or other protective cases away from direct sunlight and dust. If the bottom surface of a disc is damaged, the disc may not play properly or at all.

Do not touch the bottom surface of a disc while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up discs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

If the bottom surface of a disc is dirty, take a soft, lint-free cloth, or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Wipe the disc from the center to the outer edge.

Care of the CD/DVD Player

Do not add a label to a disc, as it could get caught in the CD/DVD player. If a label is needed, label the top of the recorded disc with a marking pen.

Do not use disc lens cleaners because they could contaminate the lens of the disc optics and damage the CD/DVD player.

Notice: **If a label is added to a CD, more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

Control Buttons

The buttons used to control the CD/DVD player are:

MEM/DVD/AUX: Press to choose between the MEM, CD/DVD, and AUX.

⏭ / ⏮ : Press to select tracks or to fast forward or rewind within a track.

INFO: Press to display additional information about the disc that may be available.

TUNE: Turn to select tracks.

Menu Knob: Turn to enter the menu.

SELECT: Press to select an item.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press to eject the disc.

▶/II **:** Press to pause a CD, DVD-A, or DVD-V; press again to resume playback. Press and hold to stop a DVD-V disc.

Inserting a CD or DVD

With the printed side facing up, insert a disc into the slot until it is drawn in.

Removing a CD or DVD

Press ⏏.

The disc is pushed out of the CD/DVD slot.

If the disc is not removed after it is ejected, it is pulled back in after a few seconds.

Playing a CD or DVD-A Disc

Press the MEM/DVD/AUX button if there is a disc in the player. It begins playing.

Information about the disc and current track is shown on the display depending on the data stored.

Selecting CD or DVD-A Tracks

Using the control buttons:

- Press ⏮ or ⏭ to select the previous or next track.
- Turn the TUNE knob.

Using the menu:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Tracks List.
3. Select the track.

Pausing a CD or DVD-A Track

Press ▶/II to pause a CD or DVD-A track. Press ▶/II again to continue playing the track.

Playing CD or DVD-A Tracks in Random Order

Turn the Menu knob and set Shuffle Songs to On.

Fast Forward and Rewind

Press and hold ⏭ or ⏮ to fast forward or rewind within the current track.

Playing an MP3 CD or DVD

Files that are not stored in folders are displayed in the root directory (disc).

The search rate increases if the Menu knob is continuously turned while searching in a list.

Selecting an MP3 Track

Using the control buttons:

- Press ⏮ or ⏭ to select the previous or next track.
- Turn the TUNE knob.

Using the CD or DVD Menu:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Folder List.
3. Select the folder.
4. Select the track.

Searching for MP3s on a CD or DVD

It is normal for the search feature to take some time to display the information after reading the disc due to the amount of information stored on the disc. The infotainment system automatically switches to FM while the disc is being read.

Files that do not have any meta data stored in the ID3 tag display as Unknown.

Tracks can be searched for by:

- Playlists
- Artists
- Albums
- Song Titles
- Genres

The number of objects in each category is shown in parentheses after the category.

To search for tracks:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Search.
3. Select: Playlists, Artists, Albums, Song Titles, or Genres.
4. Select the track. The search rate increases if the Menu knob is continuously turned while searching in a list.

Playing MP3 Tracks in Random Order

Turn the Menu knob and then set Shuffle Songs to On.

Recording an Audio or MP3 CD to MEM

See *Mass Storage Media (MEM) on page 7-36* for more information.

Playing a DVD-V

See *Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System on page 7-47* for information about how to control a Video DVD using the wireless remote control.

Selecting a Chapter

Using the control buttons:

- Press ⏮ or ⏭ to select the previous or next chapter.
- Turn the TUNE knob.

Using the DVD menu:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Chapter List.
3. Select the chapter.

Selecting a Title

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Title List.
3. Select the title.

Changing the Audio Stream

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Audio Stream.
3. Select Change Audio Stream.
4. Press SELECT to change the selection.

Select Cancel to exit the menu.

Pausing a DVD

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Pause to pause the disc. Select Unpause to start playback.

Navigating the DVD-V Disc Menu

Use the following actions to navigate the title menu on a DVD-V Disc.

- Select/Enter
- Cursor UP
- Cursor DOWN
- Cursor RIGHT
- Cursor LEFT
- Up Menu

Use the following actions to navigate the menu on a DVD-V Disc while playing chapters.

- Pause (Play)
- Chapter List
- Title List
- DVD/DVD
- DVD/AUX
- AUX/DVD
- AUX/AUX

To navigate the menu:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select the action.

MP3

Playing an MP3, CD, and DVD

For vehicles equipped with the MyLink or IntelliLink infotainment system, see the separate MyLink/IntelliLink Features and Functions Guide for more information.

MP3 Format

There are guidelines that must be met, when creating an MP3 disc or the CD might not play.

The guidelines are:

- Sampling rate: 8 kHz, 16 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 24 kHz, 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, and 48 kHz.
- Bit rates supported: 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160, 192, 224, 256, and 320 kbps.

- Maximum number of folders is 255 with a maximum hierarchy of eight folders.
- Maximum of 1024 files on a disc.
- Recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW with a maximum capacity of 700 MB.
- The Artist/Album/Song Titles/ Genre information requires a CD to be fully scanned before the music navigator works with these menus. Disc scanning does not occur when the disc is being played.

When an MP3 is loaded in the player, MP3 displays.

If a disc is already loaded, but you are currently on a map screen or listening to a different audio source, press SOURCE to switch to the disc source. A track number appears on the display when each track starts to play.

To play a disc:

TUNE/ ▶/II (Play/Pause): Use to start, pause, or resume play of a loaded disc.

⏭ (Next/Forward): Press to seek to the next track. Press again to continue moving forward through the disc.

Press and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏮ (Previous/Reverse): Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has played for less than five seconds, it goes to the previous track. If longer than five seconds, the current track restarts. Press again to continue moving back through the disc.

Press and hold this button to reverse quickly through playback. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

Menu Knob:

Turn to:

- Enter the menu system.
- Highlight a menu option.
- Select a value.

SELECT:

Press to:

- Select or activate the highlighted menu option.
- Confirm a set value.
- Turn a system setting on or off.

Disc Music Menu

Press the SELECT knob to access the Disc music menu.

Turn the SELECT knob to scroll, then press it to select any of the following category buttons on the MP3 music menu to display the corresponding category screen:

- **Folders/Playlists**

  Select to view the folders stored on the disc. Select a folder to view the list of all the songs in that folder. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select the song from the list and it begins to play.

- **Track List (All Songs)**

  Select to view a list of all songs on the disc. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select a song from the list and it begins to play. Songs are displayed based on the CD burning application folder and file structure used.

- **Artists**

  Select to view the list of artists that have been stored on the disc. Select an artist name to view a list of all songs by the artist. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select the desired song from the list and it begins to play.

- **Albums**

  Select to view the albums on the disc. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select a song from the list and it begins to play.

- **Genres**

  Select to view the genres on the disc. Select a genre to view a list of all songs of that genre. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select a song from the list and it begins to play.

- **Song Titles**

  Select to display a list of all songs on the disc. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select a song from the list and it begins to play. Songs are displayed in alphabetical order based on the Song Title ID3 tag, if available.

Root Directory

The root directory is treated as a folder. All files contained directly under the root directory are accessed prior to any root directory folders.

Empty Directory or Folder

If a root directory or folder is empty or contains only folders, the player advances to the next folder in the file structure that contains a compressed audio file. The empty folder(s) are not displayed or numbered.

No Folder

When the CD only contains compressed audio files without any folders or playlists, all files are located under the root folder.

File System and Naming

The displayed song title is taken from the file's ID3 tag. If a song title is not present in the ID3 tag, the radio displays the file name as the track name.

Mass Storage Media (MEM)

Infotainment systems with MEM storage are able to record up to 1.1 GB (gigabyte) of music from audio CDs, MP3/WMA/AAC discs, and USB storage devices. The MEM player can also time shift audio from AM, FM, and XM radio.

Music or content stored in MEM that you did not create, or have the right to distribute, must be deleted before the sale or end of lease of the vehicle.

Control Buttons

The buttons used to control the MEM player are:

MEM/DVD/AUX: Press to select the MEM player.

⏮ or ⏭ : Press to select tracks or to rewind or fast forward within a track.

INFO: Press to display additional information about the MEM track that may be available.

TUNE/ ▶/II : Press to pause the track currently playing; press again to resume playback. Turn to select tracks.

REC ● : Press to record music from a CD or USB drive.

DEL: Press to delete the current track from MEM.

FAV (Favorites): Press to display MEM favorites.

1 to 6: Press to select a track or playlist stored in that numeric position.

Recording from Audio CDs

The infotainment system can record the current song playing or all songs from an audio CD to MEM. A status bar appears on the top of the display when the recording process starts and disappears when the process has ended. Copy protected CDs cannot be recorded to MEM.

Recording to MEM

Press REC ●, then select Record Current Song or Record All Songs on Disc. If the track has started playing, the system will restart the track and begin recording from the beginning of the track. When the song recording is completed, the message Song Recorded to MEM displays, and there may be a slight pause.

Songs recorded to MEM are stored as the current date, disc, and track number.

Re-recording a Previously Recorded Disc

If the disc or track has already been recorded to MEM, the message The Song(s) is Already Recorded displays.

Stopping the Recording

Press REC ● while recording from an audio CD to display the stop recording option. Select Stop Recording Song to MEM.

Renaming Recorded Discs

Discs that have been recorded to MEM can be renamed.

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Rename Recorded Discs.
3. Select the disc.
4. Select Album or Artist to rename either one.
5. Use the Menu knob to enter the character sequence. See *Operation on page 7-13* for more information.

Recording from MP3/WMA Discs or USB Storage Devices

USB Host Support

The USB connector uses the USB standards, 1.1 and 2.0.

USB Supported Devices

- USB Flash Drives
- Portable USB Hard Drives

Recording to MEM

Press REC ●, then select Record Current Song or Record Current Folder.

The information stored by MEM is titled according to the ID3 tag associated with it.

Re-recording a Previously Recorded Disc

If the disc or track has already been recorded to MEM, the message The Song(s) is Already Recorded displays.

Stopping the Recording

Press REC ● while recording from an MP3/WMA CD or USB storage device to display the stop recording option. Select Stop Recording Song to MEM.

Deleting Tracks from MEM

Individual tracks and all tracks can be deleted from MEM.

To delete individual tracks, press and release the DEL button while the track is playing.

To delete all tracks from MEM, press and hold the DEL button while a track is playing.

Playing from MEM

Playing Back a Previously Recorded CD

Turn the TUNE knob to select a track if MEM is already playing from the previously recorded disc.

1. Select Recorded Disc List.
2. Select the disc.
3. Select the track.

Searching for a Track

Tracks can be searched for by:

- Playlists
- Artists
- Albums
- Song Titles
- Genres

The number of objects in each category is shown in parentheses after the category.

To search for tracks:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Search.
3. Select: Playlists, Artists, Albums, Song Titles, or Genres.
4. Select the track. The search rate increases if the Menu knob is continuously turned while searching in a list.

Shuffle Songs

Select the Shuffle Songs option from the MEM menu to randomly play back tracks stored in MEM.

Configuring MEM Favorites

During MEM playback, press the FAV button to change between favorite categories. The favorite categories are:

- Playlists
- Artists
- Albums
- Genres

To remove MEM favorites categories:

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Radio Settings.
3. Select MEM Favorites.
4. Remove the checkmark from the box to remove that MEM favorites category.

Replace the checkmark to re-add the removed category.

Saving MEM Tracks as Favorites

Favorites can be saved by pressing and holding one of the 1 to 6 buttons. Favorites can be stored according to the following list:

Playlist: Adds the currently playing track to the playlist selected.

Artist: Saves the artist associated with the currently playing track in the indicated favorites position.

Album: Saves the album associated with the currently playing track in the indicated favorites position.

Genre: Saves the genre associated with the currently playing track in the indicated favorites position.

Creating Playlists

To create a playlist using tracks stored in MEM:

1. Select Playlist from the MEM favorites.
2. Select the track to be stored in the playlist.
3. Press and hold one of the 1 to 6 buttons until the track can be heard again to store the track.
4. Repeat Steps 1 through 3 to store additional tracks in the playlist.

Auxiliary Devices (Radio with CD and Touchscreen)

For vehicles equipped with the MyLink or IntelliLink infotainment system, see the separate MyLink/IntelliLink Features and Functions Guide for more information.

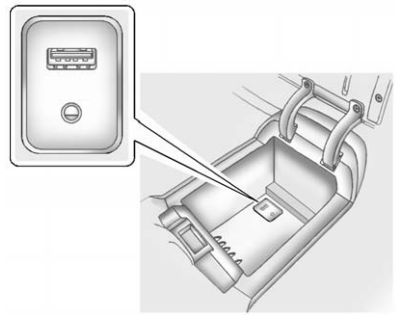
The optional AUX input allows portable devices to connect to the vehicle using the 3.5 mm (1/8 in) input jack or the USB port.

Portable devices are controlled by using the menu system described in *Overview (Radio with CD) on page 7-3* or *Overview (Radio with CD/DVD and MEM) on page 7-5* or *Overview (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-7* and *Operation on page 7-13*.

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack. Drivers are encouraged to set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- MP3 player
- Tape player



The AUX input is located in the center console.

3.5 mm Jack

Connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) cable to the auxiliary input jack to use a portable audio player.

Playback of an audio device that is connected to the 3.5 mm jack can only be controlled using the controls on the device.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected on vehicles with a touchscreen, but a different source is currently active, press the Now Playing screen button on the Home Page, then press Source repeatedly to cycle through all of the available audio source screens, until the AUX source screen is selected.

Adjusting the Volume

Turn the VOL/ ⏻ knob to adjust the volume of the infotainment system after the volume level has been set on the portable audio device.

USB Port

For vehicles with a USB port, the following devices may be connected and controlled by the infotainment system.

- iPods
- PlaysForSure Devices (PFDs)
- USB Drives
- Zunes™
- USB mass storage device
- Microsoft Transfer Protocal (MTP)

Not all iPods, PFDs, USB Drives, and Zunes are compatible with the infotainment system.

Connecting and Controlling an iPod® (Radio with CD and Radio with CD/DVD/MEM)

Not all iPods can be controlled by the infotainment system.

Connecting an iPod

Connect the iPod to the USB port.

Selecting a Track

Using the control buttons:

- Press ⏮ or ⏭ to select the previous or next track.
- Turn the TUNE knob to select a track in the current submenu. The track will start to play.

Searching for a Track

Tracks can be searched for by:

- Playlists
- Artists
- Albums
- Song Titles
- Podcasts
- Genres
- Audiobooks
- Composers

To search for tracks:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Search.
3. Select: Playlists, Artists, Albums, Song Titles, Podcasts, Genres, Audiobooks, or Composers.
4. Select the track.

Shuffle (Radio with CD)

Turn the Menu knob and set Shuffle Songs (Random) to On or Off, then press the ⇦ BACK button to return the main screen.

On: Plays tracks in the current folder in random order.

Off: Plays tracks in the current folder in sequential order.

Repeat

Turn the Menu knob and set Repeat to On or Off, then press the ⇦ BACK button to return the main screen.

On: Repeats the current track.

Off: Playback starts from the beginning of the current track after the last track finishes.

Shuffle (Radio with CD/ DVD/MEM)

Turn the Menu knob and set Shuffle Songs to On or Off.

Shuffle On: Plays current tracks in random order.

Shuffle Off: Plays current tracks in sequential order.

Connecting and Controlling a PlaysForSure Device (PFD) or Zune (Radio with CD)

Connecting a PFD or Zune

Connect the PFD or Zune to the USB port.

Searching for a Track

Tracks can be searched for by:

- Playlists
- Artists
- Albums
- Song Titles
- Podcasts
- Genres

To search for tracks:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Search.
3. Select: Playlists, Artists, Albums, Song Titles, Podcasts, or Genres.
4. Select the track.

Shuffle Functionality

Turn the Menu knob and set Shuffle Songs (Random) to On or Off.

On: Plays current tracks in random order.

Off: Plays current tracks in sequential order.

Repeat Functionality

Turn the Menu knob and set Repeat to On or Off.

Repeat On: Repeats the current track.

Repeat Off: Playback starts from the beginning of the current track after the last track finishes.

Connecting and Controlling a USB Drive (Radio with CD and Radio with CD/DVD/MEM)

The infotainment system can only play back .mp3 and .wma files from a USB drive.

Only the first 2,500 songs are recognized on the device.

When a device is not supported, the message “No supported data found. You can safely disconnect the device” appears.

Connecting a USB Drive

Connect the USB drive to the USB port.

Searching for a Track

It is normal for the search feature to take some time to display the information after reading the device due to the amount of information stored.

Files that do not have any meta data stored in the ID3 tag display as Unknown.

Tracks can be searched for by:

- Playlists*
- Artists
- Albums
- Song Titles
- Genres
- Folder View

*This only displays if a playlist is found on the device.

To search for tracks:

1. Turn the Menu knob.
2. Select Search.
3. Select: Playlists, Artists, Albums, Song Titles, Genres, or Folder View.
4. Select the track.

Shuffle Functionality

Turn the Menu knob and set Shuffle Songs (Random) to On or Off.

On: Plays current tracks in random order.

Off: Plays current tracks in sequential order.

Repeat Functionality

Turn the Menu knob and set Repeat to On or Off.

Repeat On: Repeats the current track.

Repeat Off: Playback starts from the beginning of the current track after the last track finishes.

Recording Tracks to MEM (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM)

See *Mass Storage Media (MEM) on page 7-36* for more information.

Playing from a USB (Radio with CD and Touchscreen)

A USB mass storage device or Microsoft Transfer Protocal (MTP) device can be connected to the USB port.

The USB port is in the center console.

The USB icon displays when the USB device is connected.

USB MP3 Player and USB Drives

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Only USB MP3 players and USB drives with a sector size or 512 bytes and a cluster size smaller or equal to 32 kbytes in the FAT32 file system are supported.
- Hard disk drives are not supported.

- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on a USB MP3 player or USB device:
  - Maximum folder structure depth: 11 levels.
  - Maximum number of MP3/WMA files that can be displayed: 1,000
- WMA with Digital Rights Management (DRM) from online music shops cannot be played. WMA files can only be played back safely if they were created with Windows Media Player version 8 or later.
  - Applicable playlist extensions are: .m3u, .pls.
  - Playlist entries must be in the form of relative paths.
  - The system attribute for folders/files that contain audio data must not be set.

To play a USB device, do one of the following:

- Connect the USB and it begins to play.
- Press the Now Playing screen button on the Home Page, then press the SOURCE button on the faceplate repeatedly to cycle through all of the available audio source screens, until the USB source screen is selected.

While the USB source is active, use the following to operate USB function:

TUNE/ ▶/II (Play/Pause): Press to start, pause, or resume play of the current media source.

⏮ (Seek Down):

1. Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, the previous track plays. If playing longer than five seconds, the current track restarts.
2. Press and hold to reverse quickly through playback.
3. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭ (Seek Up):

1. Press to seek to the next track.
2. Press and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

USB Menu

Press any of the following buttons on the USB Menu:

Shuffle Songs: Press to play the tracks randomly. Press again to stop shuffle.

Playlists: Press to view the playlists stored on the USB. Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Artists: Press to view the list of artists stored on the USB. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist. There might be a delay before the list displays. To select a song, touch All Songs then select a song or touch an album then select a song from the list to begin playback.

Albums: Press to view the albums on the USB. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album. There might be a delay before the list displays. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Song Titles: Press to display a list of all songs on the USB. Songs are displayed as stored on the disc. There might be a delay before the list displays. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

Genres: Press to view the genres on the USB. Select a genre to view a list of all songs of that genre. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Folders: Press to open a folder list to access the files within the folder structure.

File System and Naming

The song titles, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's ID3 tag and are only displayed if present in the tag. If a song title is not present in the ID3 tag, the radio displays the file name as the track name.

Playing from an iPod® (Radio with CD and Touchscreen)

This feature supports the following iPod models:

- iPod nano (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generation)
- iPod with video (5.0 and 5.5 generation). Video is not shown; only audio is supported.
- iPod classic (6th generation)
- iPod touch (1st and 2nd generation)

There may be problems with operation and function in the following situations:

- When connecting an iPod on which a more recent version of the firmware is installed than is supported by the infotainment system.
- When connecting an iPod on which firmware from other providers is installed.

To connect and control an iPod, connect one end of the standard iPod USB cable to the iPod's dock connector. Connect the other end to the USB port in the center console.

iPod music information displays on the radio's display and begins playing through the vehicle's audio system.

The iPod battery recharges automatically while the vehicle is on. When the vehicle is off while an iPod is connected using the iPod USB cable, the iPod battery stops charging and the iPod automatically turns off.

If the iPod is an unsupported model, it can still be listened to in the vehicle by connecting to the auxiliary input jack using a standard 3.5 mm (1/8 in) stereo cable.

Shuffle Songs: Press to play the tracks randomly. Press again to stop shuffle.

Press any of the following buttons on the iPod Menu:

Playlists:

1. Press to view the playlists stored on the iPod.
2. Select a playlist name to view a list of all songs in the playlist.
3. Select the desired song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Press to view the artists stored on the iPod.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all songs by the artist.
3. Select the desired song from the list to begin playback.

Albums:

1. Press to view the albums stored on the iPod.
2. Select an album name to view a list of all songs on the album or select All Songs to view all songs by the artist.
3. Select the desired song from the list to begin playback.

Song Titles:

1. Press to view a list of all songs stored on the iPod.
2. Select the desired song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Press to view the genres stored on the iPod.
2. Select a genre name to view a list of artists of that genre.
3. Select an artist to view albums or All Songs to view all songs of that genre.
4. Select album to view songs.
5. Select the desired song from the list to begin playback.

Podcasts:

1. Press to view the podcasts stored on the iPod.
2. Select a podcast name to play the desired podcast.

Composers:

1. Press to view the composers stored on the iPod.
2. Select a composer name to view a list of all songs by that composer.
3. Select the desired song from the list to begin playback.

Audio Books:

1. Press to view the audio books stored on the iPod.
2. Select an audio book name to view a list of all audio books.
3. Select the desired audio book from the list to begin playback.

Playing from an iPhone®

This feature supports the following iPhone model:

- iPhone (3G – 3GS)

To use the iPhone, follow the same instructions as stated earlier for using an iPod.

Rear Seat Infotainment

Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System

The vehicle may have a DVD Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system. The RSE system works with the vehicle's infotainment system. The DVD player is part of the front radio. The RSE system includes a radio with a DVD player, two rear seat video display screens, audio/video jacks, two wireless headphones, and a remote control. See *CD/DVD Player on page 7-30* or the separate navigation system manual for more information on the vehicle's DVD system.

Before Driving

The RSE is for rear seat passengers only. The driver cannot safely view the video screen while driving.

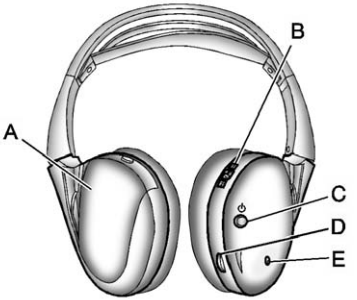
In severe or extreme weather conditions, the RSE system may not work until the temperature is within the operating range. The operating range is above −20°C (−4°F) and below 60°C (140°F). If the temperature is outside of this range, heat or cool the vehicle until it is within the operating range.

Global Off

Depending on the infotainment system, the RSE system may have a Global Off feature. The Global Off feature disables all RSE system features. Press and hold the radio power button for more than three seconds for Global Off to disable the RSE features. On some infotainment systems, the Global Off feature can be turned off by performing one of the following:

- Press and hold the radio power button for more than three seconds.
- Insert or eject any disc.
- Insert a DVD video disc.
- Press the remote control power button.
- Press the MEM/DVD/AUX button or ▶/II when a DVD video disc is in the player.
- Press the SRC button on the steering wheel when a DVD video disc is in the player.
- Cycle the ignition.

Headphones



A. Battery Cover

B. Channel 1 or 2 Switch

C. Power Button

D. Volume Control

E. Power Indicator Light

RSE includes two 2-channel wireless headphones. Channel 1 is dedicated to the DVD player, and Channel 2 is dedicated to any external auxiliary device connected to the A/V jacks. The headphones are used to listen to various

multi-media. The wireless headphones have a power button, channel
1/2 switch, and a volume control. Turn the headphones off when not in use.

Push ⏻ to turn on the headphones. A light on the headphones comes on. If the light does not come on, check the batteries. Intermittent sound or static can also indicate weak batteries. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section for more information.

Infrared transmitters are on the top of the left seatback video screen. The headphones shut off automatically to save the battery power if the RSE system is shut off or if the headphones are out of range of the transmitters for more than three minutes. Moving too far forward or stepping out of the vehicle can cause the headphones to lose the signal or have static.

To adjust the volume on the headphones, use the volume control.

For optimal audio performance, the headphones must be worn correctly. Headphones should be worn with the headband over the top of the head for best audio reception. The symbol L (Left) appears on the outside bottom edge of the ear cup and should be positioned on the left ear. The symbol R (Right) appears on the outside bottom edge of the ear cup and should be positioned on the right ear.

Notice: **Do not store the headphones in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the headphones and repairs will not be covered by the warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the headphones stored in a cool, dry place.**

If the foam ear pads attached to the headphones become worn or damaged, the pads can be replaced separately from the headphone set. To purchase replacement ear pads, call 1-888-293-3332, then prompt zero (0), or contact your dealer.

Battery Replacement

To change the batteries:

1. Loosen the screw to the battery door located on the left side of the headphones.
2. Slide the battery door open.
3. Replace the two AAA batteries.
4. Replace the battery door and tighten the screw.

Remove the batteries if the headphones are not going to be used for a long period of time.

Audio/Video (A/V) Jacks

If available, the A/V jacks are located on the rear of the floor console. They allow audio or video cables to be connected from an auxiliary device such as a camcorder or a video game system.

The A/V jacks are color coded:

- Yellow for video input.
- White for left audio input.
- Red for right audio input.

Power for auxiliary devices is not supplied by the radio system.

To use the auxiliary inputs of the RSE system:

1. Connect the auxiliary device cables to the A/V jacks.
2. Power on both the auxiliary device and the RSE video screen.

Changing the Source on the Video Display Screens

The image from the auxiliary device can be switched between the video display screens.

To change the display:

1. Press the AUX button on the remote control to change the source of both video screens from the DVD player to the auxiliary device.
2. Press the AUX button a second time to change the left video screen source to the DVD player and the right video screen to the auxiliary device.
3. Press the AUX button a third time to change the left video screen source to the auxiliary device and the right video screen to the DVD player.
4. Press the AUX button a fourth time to change the source of both video screens to the DVD player.

Changing the RSE Video Screen Settings

The screen display mode, brightness, and language can be changed from the setup menu using the remote control. To change a setting:

1. Press ▢.
2. Use ▲, ▼, ◀, ▶, and ◀┘ to select the settings.
3. Press ▢ again to exit the setup menu.

Audio Output

Audio from the DVD player or auxiliary inputs can be heard through the following:

- Wireless Headphones
- Vehicle Speakers

The RSE system transmits the audio signal to the wireless headphones if an audio signal is available. See “Headphones” earlier in this section for more information.

The front seat passengers are able to listen to playback from the A/V jacks through the vehicle speakers by selecting Rear A/V as the source on the radio.

Video Screens

The video screens are located in the back of the driver and front passenger seats.

To use the video screen:

1. Push the release button located on the seatback console.
2. Move the screen to the desired viewing position.

Push the video screen down into its locked position when it is not in use. The screen turns off automatically.

Only the left RSE seatback console contains the infrared transmitters for the wireless headphones. They may be visible as eight illuminated LEDs. These LEDs are not on the right video screen. Both seatback consoles contain an infrared receiver for the remote control. They are located at the top of each console.

Notice: **Avoid directly touching the video screen, as damage may occur. See “Cleaning the Video Screens” later in this section for more information.**

Video Screen Input Jack

Each video screen is equipped with a video input jack to allow video cables to be connected from an auxiliary device such as a camcorder or a video game system. This signal will override any video provided by the RSE system; either the DVD or auxiliary A/V jack source. The RSE system must be on for this input to operate.

Remote Control

To use the remote control, aim it at the transmitter window at either seatback console and press the button. Direct sunlight or very bright light could affect the ability of the RSE transmitter to receive signals from the remote control. Check the batteries if the remote control does not seem to be working. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section. Objects blocking the line of sight could also affect the function of the remote control.

If a CD, DVD, or MP3 disc is in the Radio DVD slot, the remote control ⏻ button can be used to turn on the video screen display and start the disc. The infotainment system can also turn on the video screen display. See *CD/DVD Player on page 7-30* or the separate navigation system manual for more information.

Notice: **Storing the remote control in a hot area or in direct sunlight can damage it, and the repairs will not be covered by the warranty. Storage in extreme cold can weaken the batteries. Keep the remote control stored in a cool, dry place.**

Remote Control Buttons

⏻ **(Power):** Press to turn the video screens on and off.

☼ **(Illumination):** Press to turn the remote control backlight on. The backlight times out after several seconds if no other button is pressed.

↰ **(Title):** Press to return to the main menu of the DVD. This function could vary for each disc.

▤ **(Main Menu):** Press to access the DVD menu. The DVD menu is different on every DVD. Use the navigation arrows to move the cursor. After making a selection press the enter button. This button only operates when using a DVD.

▲, ▼, ◀, ▶ **(Menu Navigation Arrows):** Use the arrow buttons to navigate through a menu.

◄┘ **(Enter):** Press to select the highlighted choice in any menu.

(Display Menu): Press to adjust the brightness and screen display mode, and display the language menu.

(Return): Press to exit the current active menu and return to the previous menu. This button operates only when the display menu or a DVD menu is active.

(Stop): Press to stop playing, rewinding, or fast forwarding a DVD. Press twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.

(Play/Pause): Press to start playing a DVD. Press to pause a DVD while it is playing. Press again to continue playing.

Depending on the infotainment system in the vehicle, DVD playback may be slowed down by pressing then . Reverse slow play by pressing then . Press again to cancel slow play.

(Previous Track/Chapter): Press to go to the start of the current track or chapter. Press again to go to the previous track or chapter. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Next Track/Chapter): Press to go to the beginning of the next chapter or track. This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Fast Reverse): Press to quickly reverse the DVD or CD. To stop fast reversing a DVD video, press . To stop fast reversing a DVD audio or CD, release . This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Fast Forward): Press to fast forward the DVD or CD. To stop fast forwarding a DVD video, press . To stop fast forwarding a DVD audio or CD, release . This button might not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Audio): Press to change audio tracks on DVDs that have this feature when the DVD is playing.

(Subtitles): Press to turn ON/OFF subtitles and to move through subtitle options when a DVD is playing.

AUX (Auxiliary): Press to switch the video display between the DVD player and an auxiliary source.

The AUX button also controls the source display between the left and right video screens as described in the table below:

Aux Button Press	Left Screen	Right Screen
Default State (No Press)	DVD Media	DVD Media
First Press	Aux Video Source	Aux Video Source
Second Press	DVD Media	Aux Video Source
Third Press	Aux Video Source	DVD Media
Fourth Press	Return to Default State	Return to Default State

(Camera): Press to change the camera angle on DVDs that have this feature when the DVD is playing.

(Clear) (If Available): Press this button within three seconds after inputting a numeric selection, to clear all numeric inputs.

≧10 (Double Digit Entries) (If Available): Press this button to select chapter or track numbers greater than 9. Press this button before inputting the number.

1 through 0 (Numeric Keypad): The numbered keypad provides the capability of direct chapter or track number selection.

Replacing the Remote Control

If the remote control becomes lost or damaged, a new universal remote control can be purchased. Use a Toshiba® code set for replacement universal remote controls.

Battery Replacement

To change the remote control batteries:

1. Slide back the rear cover on the remote control.
2. Replace the two batteries in the compartment.
3. Replace the battery cover.

Remove the batteries from the remote control if unused for an extended period of time.

Tips and Troubleshooting Chart

Problem	Recommended Action
No power.	The ignition might not be turned to ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY.
The picture does not fill the screen. There are black borders on the top and bottom or both sides, or it looks stretched out.	Check the display mode settings in the setup menu by pressing the display menu button on the remote control.
In auxiliary mode, the picture moves or scrolls.	Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices.
The remote control does not work.	Check to make sure there is no obstruction between the remote control and the transmitter window. Check the batteries to make sure they are not dead or installed incorrectly.
After stopping the player, I push Play but sometimes the DVD starts where I left off and sometimes at the beginning.	If the Stop button was pressed one time, the DVD player resumes playing where the DVD was stopped. If the Stop button was pressed two times the DVD player begins to play from the beginning of the DVD.
The auxiliary source is running but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the RSE video screen is in the auxiliary source mode by pressing the AUX button on the remote control. Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices.

Tips and Troubleshooting Chart (cont'd)

Problem	Recommended Action
Sometimes the wireless headphone audio cuts out or buzzes.	Check for obstructions, low batteries, reception range, and interference from cellular telephone towers or by using a cellular telephone in the vehicle. Check that the headphones are on correctly using the L (Left) and R (Right) on the headphones. Check that the headphones are positioned properly with the headband across the top of the head.
I lost the remote and/or the headphones.	See your dealer for assistance.
The DVD is playing, but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the RSE video screen is sourced to the DVD player by pressing the AUX button on the remote control.

DVD Display Error Messages

The DVD display error message depends on which radio the vehicle has. The video screen may display one of the following:

Disc Load/Eject Error or Mechanical Error: There are disc load or eject problems.

Disc Format Error or Unknown Format: The disc is inserted with the disc label wrong side up, or the disc is damaged.

Disc Region Error or Disc Error: The disc is not from a correct region.

No Disc Inserted: No disc is present when the ⏏ or MEM/DVD/AUX button is pressed on the radio.

DVD Distortion

Video distortion can occur when operating cellular phones, scanners, CB radios, Global Position Systems (GPS)*, two-way radios, mobile fax machines, or walkie talkies.

It might be necessary to turn off the DVD player when operating one of these devices in or near the vehicle.

*Excludes the OnStar System.

Cleaning the RSE Seatback Console

Use only a clean cloth dampened with clean water to clean the RSE seatback console surface.

Cleaning the Video Screen

Use only a clean cloth dampened with clean water. Use care when touching or cleaning the screen as damage could result.

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)

For vehicles equipped with the MyLink or IntelliLink infotainment system, see the separate MyLink/IntelliLink Features and Functions Guide for more information.

For vehicles equipped with Bluetooth capability, the system can interact with many cell phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the cell phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the cell phone. Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair cell phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all cell phones. See "Pairing" in this section for more information.
- If the cell phone has voice dialing capability, learn to use that feature to access the address book or contact list. See "Voice Pass-Thru" in this section for more information.

- See “Storing and Deleting Phone Numbers” in this section for more information.

⚠ WARNING

When using a cell phone, it can be distracting to look too long or too often at the screen of the phone or the infotainment (navigation) system. Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m (30 ft). Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system. See www.gm.com/bluetooth for more information about compatible phones.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons located on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

/ (Push To Talk) : Press to answer incoming calls, confirm system information, and start voice recognition.

/ (End Call): Press to end a call, reject a call, or cancel an operation.

Infotainment System Controls

If equipped, the infotainment system allows certain controls to be selected on the infotainment display.

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Overview (Radio with CD) on page 7-3* or *Overview (Radio with CD/DVD and MEM) on page 7-5* or *Overview (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-7* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21*.

(Phone): Press to enter the Phone main menu.

Voice Recognition

The voice recognition system uses commands to control the system and dial phone numbers.

Noise: The system may not recognize voice commands if there is too much background noise.

When to Speak: A tone sounds to indicate that the system is ready for a voice command. Wait for the tone and then speak.

How to Speak: Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the VOL/ ⏻ knob during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Other Information

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-22* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)

For vehicles equipped with the MyLink or IntelliLink infotainment system, see the separate MyLink/ IntelliLink Features and Functions Guide for more information.

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Overview (Radio with CD) on page 7-3* or *Overview (Radio with CD/DVD and MEM) on page 7-5* or *Overview (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-7* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD/DVD/MEM) on page 7-18* or *AM-FM Radio (Radio with CD and Touchscreen) on page 7-21*.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone. If a Bluetooth phone is not connected, calls will be made using OnStar Hands-Free Calling, if available. See *OnStar Overview on page 14-1* for more information.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth phone with MP3 capability cannot be paired to the vehicle as a phone and an MP3 player at the same time.
- Up to five cell phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.

- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the cell phone changes or the cell phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired cell phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired cell phone in the order that they were first paired to the system. To link to a different paired phone, see “Linking to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings or Bluetooth Settings (depending on the radio).
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Pair Device (Phone). A four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN) appears on the display. The PIN is used is Step 6.
5. Start the pairing process on the cell phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process.
6. Locate the device named “Your Vehicle” in the list on the cell phone. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 4. After the PIN is successfully entered, the system prompts you to provide a name for the paired cell phone. This name will be used to indicate which phones are paired and connected to the vehicle. The system responds with “<Phone name> has been successfully paired” after the pairing process is complete.
7. Repeat Steps 1 through 6 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings or Bluetooth Settings (depending on the radio).
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings or Bluetooth Settings (depending on the radio).
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the phone to delete and follow the on screen prompts.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and available to be connected to the Bluetooth system before the process is started.

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings or Bluetooth Settings (depending on the radio).
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the new phone to link to and follow the on screen prompts.

   If delete is selected, the highlighted phone will be deleted.

Making a Call Using Phone Book

For cell phones that support the phone book feature, the Bluetooth system can use the contacts stored on your cell phone to make calls. See your cell phone's owner's guide or contact your wireless provider to find out if this feature is supported by your phone.

When a cell phone supports the phone book feature, the Phone Book and Call Lists menus are automatically available.

The Phone Book menu allows you to access the phone book stored in the cell phone to make a call.

The Call Lists menu allows you to access the phone numbers from the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, and Missed Calls menus on your cell phone to make a call.

To make a call using the Phone Book menu:

1. Press ☎ once or twice depending on radio.
2. Select Phone Book.
3. Search through the list by selecting the letter group the phone book entry begins with, or press SELECT to scroll through the entire list of names/numbers in the phone book.
4. Select the name or number you want to call.

To make a call using the Call Lists menu:

1. Press ☎ once or twice depending on radio.
2. Select Call Lists.
3. Select the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, or Missed Calls list.
4. Select the name or number you want to call.

Making a Call

To make a call:

1. Press .
2. Select Enter number.
3. Enter the character sequence. See “Entering a Character Sequence” in *Operation on page 7-13* for more information.
4. Select Call to start dialing the number.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

Turn the Menu knob to “Answer” and press SELECT to accept the call.

Declining a Call

Turn the Menu knob to “Decline” and press SELECT to decline the call.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

Accepting a Call

Turn the Menu knob to “Answer” and press SELECT to accept the call.

Declining a Call

Turn the Menu knob to “Decline” and press SELECT to decline the call.

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls:

1. Turn the Menu Knob and press SELECT.
2. Select Switch Call from the menu.

Conference Calling

Conference calling and three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

To start a conference while in a current call:

1. Turn the Menu Knob and press SELECT.
2. Select Enter Number.
3. Enter the character sequence then select Call. See “Entering a Character Sequence” in *Operation on page 7-13* for more information.
4. After the call has been placed, turn the Menu Knob to choose Merge Calls then press SELECT.
5. To add more callers to the conference call, repeat Steps 1 through 4. The number of callers that can be added is limited by your wireless service carrier.

Ending a Call

Turn the Menu knob to select Hang Up, then press SELECT.

Muting a Call

To Mute a Call

Turn the Menu knob to select Mute Call, then press SELECT.

To Cancel Mute

Turn the Menu knob to select Mute Call, then press SELECT.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

1. Turn the Menu knob to select Enter Number, then press SELECT.
2. Enter the character sequence. See “Entering a Character Sequence” in *Operation on page 7-13* for more information.

Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)

Using Voice Recognition

For vehicles equipped with the MyLink or IntelliLink infotainment system, see the separate MyLink/IntelliLink Features and Functions Guide for more information.

To use voice recognition, press the / button located on the steering wheel. Use the commands below for the various voice features. For additional information, say "Help" while you are in a voice recognition menu.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone. If a Bluetooth phone is not connected, calls will be made using OnStar Hands-Free Calling, if available. See *OnStar Overview on page 14-1* for more information.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth phone with MP3 capability cannot be paired to the vehicle as a phone and an MP3 player at the same time.
- Up to five cell phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.

- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the cell phone changes or the cell phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired cell phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired cell phone in the order that they were first paired to the system. To link to a different paired phone, see “Linking to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.” This command can be skipped.
3. Say “Pair.” The system responds with instructions and a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN). The PIN is used in Step 5.
4. Start the pairing process on the cell phone that you want to pair. For help with this process, see your cell phone manufacturer's user guide.
5. Locate the device named “Your Vehicle” in the list on the cell phone. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 3. After the PIN is successfully entered, the system prompts you to provide a name for the paired cell phone. This name will be used to indicate which phones are paired and connected to the vehicle. The system responds with “<Phone name> has been successfully paired” after the pairing process is complete.
6. Repeat Steps 1 through 5 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

The system can list all cell phones paired to it. If a paired cell phone is also connected to the vehicle, the system responds with “is connected” after that phone name.

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “List.”

Deleting a Paired Phone

If the phone name you want to delete is unknown, see “Listing All Paired and Connected Phones.”

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Delete.” The system asks for which phone to delete.
4. Say the name of the phone you want to delete.

Connecting to a Different Phone

To connect to a different cell phone, the Bluetooth system looks for the next available cell phone in the order in which all the available cell phones were paired. Depending on which cell phone you want to connect to, you may have to use this command several times.

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Change phone.”
   - If another cell phone is found, the response will be “<Phone name> is now connected.”
   - If another cell phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

Storing and Deleting Phone Numbers

The system can store up to 30 phone numbers as name tags in the Hands-Free Directory that is shared between the Bluetooth and OnStar systems.

The following commands are used to delete and store phone numbers.

Store: This command will store a phone number, or a group of numbers as a name tag.

Digit Store: This command allows a phone number to be stored as a name tag by entering the digits one at a time.

Delete: This command is used to delete individual name tags.

Delete All Name Tags: This command deletes all stored name tags in the Hands-Free Calling Directory and the Destinations Directory.

Using the “Store” Command

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Store.”
3. Say the phone number or group of numbers you want to store all at once with no pauses, then follow the directions given by the system to save a name tag for this number.

Using the “Digit Store” Command

If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say “Clear” at any time to clear the last number.

To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say “Verify” at any time.

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Digit Store.”

3. Say each digit, one at a time, that you want to store. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone. After the last digit has been entered, say “Store,” and then follow the directions given by the system to save a name tag for this number.

Using the “Delete” Command

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete.”
3. Say the name tag you want to delete.

Using the “Delete All Name Tags” Command

This command deletes all stored name tags in the Hands-Free Calling Directory and the Destinations Directory.

To delete all name tags:

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete all name tags.”

Listing Stored Numbers

The list command will list all the stored numbers and name tags.

Using the “List” Command

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Directory.”
3. Say “Hands Free Calling.”
4. Say “List.”

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

Dial or Call: The dial or call command can be used interchangeably to dial a phone number or a stored name tag.

Digit Dial: This command allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time.

Re-dial: This command is used to dial the last number used on the cell phone.

Using the “Dial” or “Call” Command

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial” or “Call.”
3. Say the entire number without pausing or say the name tag.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the “Digit Dial” Command

The digit dial command allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone.

If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say “Clear” at any time to clear the last number.

To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say “Verify” at any time.

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Digit Dial.”
3. Say each digit, one at a time, that you want to dial. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone. After the last digit has been entered, say “Dial.”

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the “Re-dial” Command

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Re-dial.” The system dials the last number called from the connected cell phone.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Receiving a Call

When an incoming call is received, the audio system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

- Press / to answer the call.
- Press / to ignore a call.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier.

- Press / to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press / again to return to the original call.
- To ignore the incoming call, no action is required.
- Press / to disconnect the current call and switch to the call on hold.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier.

1. While on a call, press / .
2. Say “Three-way call.”

3. Use the dial or call command to dial the number of the third party to be called.
4. Once the call is connected, press / to link all callers together.

Ending a Call

Press / to end a call.

Muting a Call

During a call, all sounds from inside the vehicle can be muted so that the person on the other end of the call cannot hear them.

To mute a call, press / , and then say “Mute Call.”

To cancel mute, press / , and then say “Un-mute Call.”

Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the Bluetooth system and the cell phone.

The cell phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth system before a call can be transferred. The connection process can take up to two minutes after the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.

To Transfer Audio from the Bluetooth System to a Cell Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle:

1. Press / .
2. Say “Transfer Call.”

To Transfer Audio to the Bluetooth System from a Cell Phone

During a call with the audio on the cell phone, press / . The audio transfers to the vehicle. If the audio does not transfer to the vehicle, use the audio transfer feature on the cell phone. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for more information.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice pass-thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the cell phone supports this feature.

To access contacts stored in the cell phone:

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.” This command can be skipped.
3. Say “Voice.” The system responds “OK, accessing <phone name>.”

The cell phone's normal prompt messages will go through their cycle according to the phone's operating instructions.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The Bluetooth system can send numbers and the numbers stored as name tags during a call. You can use this feature when calling a menu-driven phone system. Account numbers can also be stored for use.

Sending a Number or Name Tag During a Call

1. Press / . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial.”
3. Say the number or name tag to send.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained indefinitely. This includes all saved name tags in the phone book and phone pairing information. For information on how to delete this information, see the previous sections on “Deleting a Paired Phone” and “Deleting Name Tags.”

Bluetooth (UHP Mexico Only)

General Information

Vehicles with a Universal Hands-free Phone (UHP) system can use a Bluetooth® capable mobile phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice control are used to control the system. The system can be used while the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. The range of the UHP system can be up to 10 m (33 ft). Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the UHP system.

Other Information

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

UHP Controls

Use the buttons located on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the UHP system.

Steering Wheel Controls

Steering wheel controls can be used to:

- Answer incoming calls
- Confirm system information
- Start voice recognition
- End a call
- Reject a call
- Cancel an operation
- Make outgoing calls using the call list

/ (Push To Talk) : Press to answer incoming calls, to confirm system information, and to start voice control. Press and hold for two to three seconds to access the call list.

/ (End call/Mute) : Press to end a call, reject a call, or to cancel an operation.

To make outgoing calls using the call list.

1. Press the / button.
2. Highlight the phone number by toggling the SRC switch up or down.
3. Dial the highlighted number by pressing the / button.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the navigation system controls, see the separate Navigation System Manual.

PHONE : Press to enter the Phone main menu.

Voice Control

The voice control system uses commands to control the system and dial phone numbers.

Noise: The system may not recognize voice commands if there is too much background noise.

When to Speak: A tone sounds to indicate that the system is ready for a voice command. Wait for the tone and then speak.

How to Speak: Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

Audio System

When using the UHP system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the VOL/ ⏻ knob during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Turning Bluetooth On or Off

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings, or touch Phone on a navigation radio.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Activation.

Changing Bluetooth Code

The default Bluetooth code should work with most mobile phones.
If you are having difficulty pairing your mobile phone, you can change the code at any time.

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings, or touch Phone on a navigation radio.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Change Bluetooth Code.
5. Enter a new four-digit code, then select OK.

Ring Tone

There are three different ring tones available for the UHP system.

To change the ring tone:

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings, or touch Phone on a navigation radio.
3. Select Ring Tones.
4. Select Ring Tone 1, 2, or 3.

Default Settings

Selecting this option will reset the ring tones and the Bluetooth code.

Pairing

A Bluetooth enabled mobile phone must be paired to the UHP system first and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information:

- Up to five mobile phones can be paired to the UHP system
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving
- The UHP system connects with the first available paired mobile phone in the order the phone was paired
- Only one paired mobile phone can be connected to the UHP system at a time
- Pairing should only need to be completed once, unless changes to the pairing information have been made or the mobile phone is deleted

Using UHP with Infotainment Controls

Pairing a Phone

If your mobile phone has simple pairing or auto discovery features, they need to be turned off before the mobile phone can be paired to the UHP system. Reference the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for information on these features.

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings, or touch Phone on a navigation radio.
3. Select Bluetooth.

4. Select Pair Device or Add new Hands-free (HF) device on a navigation radio. A four-digit number appears on the display and the UHP system goes into discovery mode.
5. Start the pairing process on the mobile phone that will be paired to the vehicle. Reference the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process.

   Locate the device named UHP followed by a four-digit number in the list on the mobile phone and follow the instructions on the mobile phone and enter the four-digit code provided by the system if necessary, then follow the instructions on the infotainment display screen.
6. Repeat Steps 1 through 5 to pair additional mobile phones.

Viewing All Paired and Connected Phones

To view all available mobile phones that are paired to the UHP system:

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings, or touch Phone on a navigation radio.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 4 to pair additional mobile phones.

Deleting a Paired Phone

To remove a paired mobile phone from the UHP system:

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings, or touch Phone on a navigation radio.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the mobile phone to delete and follow the on screen prompts.

Connecting to a Different Phone

To connect to a different paired mobile phone, the new mobile phone must be in the vehicle and available to be connected to the UHP system before the process is started.

To connect to a different phone:

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings, or touch Phone on a navigation radio.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the new mobile phone to link to and follow the on screen prompts.

If delete is selected, the highlighted mobile phone will be deleted.

Making a Call Using Phone Book and Call List

For mobile phones that support the phone book and call list features, the UHP system can use the contacts and call lists stored on your mobile phone to make calls. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide or contact your wireless provider to find out if this feature is supported by your mobile phone.

The time it takes to download the phone book and call list from your mobile phone to the UHP system can vary depending on the size of the phone book and call list stored on your mobile phone.

When a mobile phone supports the phone book and call list features, the Phone Book, and Call Lists menus are automatically available.

The Phone Book menu allows you to access the phone book stored in the mobile phone to make a call.

The Call Lists menu allows you to access the phone numbers from the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, and Missed Calls menus on your mobile phone to make a call.

To make a call using the Phone Book menu:

1. Press the PHONE button twice, or press the PHONE button once on vehicles with a navigation system.
2. Select Phone Book.
3. You can search through the list by selecting the letter group the phone book entry begins with, to continue scrolling through the entire list, turn the Menu knob.
4. Select the name or number you want to call.

To make a call using the Call Lists menu:

1. Press the PHONE button twice, or press the PHONE button once on vehicles with a navigation system.
2. Select Call Lists.
3. Select the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, or Missed Calls list.
4. Select the name or number you want to call.

Making a Call

To make a call:

1. Press the PHONE button twice, or press the PHONE button once on vehicles with a navigation system.
2. Select Enter Number for vehicles without a navigation system.

3. Select the numbers to be dialed. For vehicles with a navigation system, touch the numbers on the infotainment screen. For vehicles without a navigation system, see “Entering a Character Sequence” in for more information.
4. Select Call to start dialing the number.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

To accept the incoming call, turn the Menu knob to “Answer” and press SELECT, or press the / button on the steering wheel controls.

To decline the incoming call, turn the Menu knob to “decline” and press SELECT, or press the / button on the steering wheel controls.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the mobile phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

To accept the incoming call, turn the Menu knob to “Answer” and press SELECT, or press the / button on the steering wheel controls.

To decline the incoming call, turn the Menu knob to “Decline” and press SELECT, or press the / button on the steering wheel controls.

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Select Switch Call from the menu.

Conference Calling

Conference calling and three way calling must be supported on the mobile phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

To start a conference calling while in a call:

1. Press SELECT and select Enter Number.
2. Enter the character sequence then select call.
3. After the call has been placed, press SELECT and choose Merge Calls.
4. To add more callers to the conference call, repeat steps 1 through 3. The number of callers that can be added are limited by your wireless service carrier.

To disconnect from one caller while in a conference call, select Detach Number from the menu and select the number to hang up on.

Ending a Call

Press SELECT and select Hang Up, or press the / button on the steering wheel controls.

To Mute a Call

Press SELECT and select Mute Call.

To Cancel Mute

Press SELECT and select Mute Call.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The UHP system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu driven phone system.

To access this system:

1. Press SELECT and select Enter Number.
2. Enter the character sequence.

Operating UHP Using Voice Control

The voice control of the UHP system enables you to operate several functions of the mobile phone using your voice. The UHP system uses voice commands to control the system and dial phone numbers. After input of the command the infotainment system guides you through the dialogue with appropriate questions and feedback to achieve the desired action. The commands and numbers can be spoken without a pause between the individual words.

In addition you can save telephone numbers under a name tag that is selectable by you. The telephone connection can be set up with this name.

In the event of incorrect operation or incorrect codes, the voice control gives you voice feedback and requests you to re-enter the desired command. Apart from this, the voice control acknowledges important commands and will ask if necessary.

In order that calls are made inside the vehicle do not lead to unintentional triggering of the mobile phone, the voice control does not start until it has been activated.

Activating the Voice Control

For vehicles without a navigation system, press the / button on the steering wheel to activate the voice control of the UHP system.

For vehicles with a navigation system, press the / button on the steering wheel to activate the voice control of the UHP system The system responds with a tone. After the tone, say ”Phone.“

For the duration of the dialogue any audio source that is active is muted and any traffic news fade-in is cancelled.

Adjusting the Volume for Voice Output

Turn the volume knob of the Infotainment system or press the + / - buttons on the steering wheel.

Canceling Dialogue

There are various possibilities of deactivating the voice control and cancelling the dialogue:

- Press the / button on the steering wheel controls.
- Enter the command “Cancel.”
- Do not enter a command for some time.
- The command is unrecognized after three tries.

Main Menu Commands

The UHP system has a set of main menu commands that are available when voice control is first started. After the voice control is activated, a short tone indicates that the voice control system is waiting for a command.

Available commands:

- “Dial”
- “Call”
- “Re-dial”
- “Save”
- “Delete”
- “Directory”
- “Pair”
- “Select device”
- “Voice feedback”
- “Help”
- “Cancel”

Frequently Used Commands

Here is a list of frequently used commands:

- “Help”: the dialogue is terminated and all commands available in the current context are enumerated.
- “Cancel”: the voice control is deactivated.
- “Yes”: a suitable action is triggered depending on the context.
- “No”: a suitable action is triggered depending on the context.

Voice Feedback

Each voice input is answered or commented on by the infotainment system by way of a voice output that is adapted to the situation.

To switch the voice output on or off, enter “Voice feedback” or press the / button.

Pairing, Saving, or Deleting Phone From Device List

With the command “Pair” a mobile phone can be saved to or deleted from the device list of the UHP system. A device number will be assigned by the UHP system to the mobile phone when it is paired.

Available commands:

- “Add”
- “Delete”
- “Help”
- “Cancel”

Example of a Dialogue

User: “Pair.”

Voice output: “Do you want to add or delete a device?”

User: “Add.”

Voice output: “Using the pair function in the external device, enter <1234> to pair.”

(At this time, start the pairing process on the mobile phone that will be paired to the vehicle. Reference the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process. Locate the device named UHP followed by a four-digit number in the list on the mobile phone and follow the instructions on the mobile phone and enter the four-digit code provided by the system.)

Voice output: “Do you want to pair the device?”

User: “Yes.”

Voice output: “Paired, ending session.”

Selecting Phone from Device List

The “Select device” command can be used to select a different paired mobile phone. The UHP system asks for a device number that was assigned by the UHP system to the mobile phone when it was paired.

Example of a Dialogue

User: “Select device.”

Voice output: “Please, say a device number to select.”

User: “device number.”

Voice output: “Do you want to select the device number “device number.”

(The device name appears on the infotainment display screen)

User: “Yes.”

Voice output: “One moment please, the system searches for the selected device.”

Voice output: “Device number “device number” is selected, ending session.”

Telephone Number Dialing

After the “Dial” command, the voice control requests input of a number.

The telephone number must be spoken in your normal speech without any artificial pauses between the numbers.

Recognition is best, if a pause of at least half a second is made after every three to five digits. The infotainment system then repeats the numbers recognized.

Available Commands:

- “Dial”: the inputs are accepted.
- “Digit”: a numeric value between “0-9” is entered.
- “Delete”: the number last entered or the block of numbers last entered is deleted.
- “Plus”: a preceding “+” is entered for a call abroad.
- “Verify”: the inputs are repeated by the voice output.
- “Asterisk”: an asterisk “*” is entered.
- “Hash”: a hash character “#” is entered.
- “Pause”: a pause is entered into the character sequence.
- “Help”
- “Cancel”

The telephone number entered can have a maximum length of 25 digits.

To be able to make a call abroad you can say the word “Plus” (+) at the beginning of your number. The plus allows you to call from any country without knowing the prefix for calls made abroad in that country. Then say the required country code.

Example of a Dialogue

User: “Dial.”

Voice output: “Please, say the number to dial.”

User: “Plus four nine.”

User: “Seven three one.”

Voice output: “Seven three one.”

User: “One one nine nine.”

Voice output: “One one nine nine.”

User: “Dial.”

Voice output: “The number is being dialled.”

Making a Call Using Name Tag

When the “Call” command is used, a telephone number is entered that has been stored in the telephone book as a name tag.

Available commands:

- “Yes”
- “No”
- “Help”
- “Cancel”

Example of a Dialogue

User: “Call.”

Voice output: “Please, say the name tag to call.”

(for name tag information, see “Saving a Name Tag” later in this section)

User:”Name tag.“

Voice output: “Seven three one.”

User: “Yes.”

Voice output: “Calling.”

Starting a Second Call

Press the button / to start a second call during an active telephone call.

Available commands:

- “Send”: activate manual DTMF (touch-tone dialling), e.g. for voice mail or telephone banking.
- “Send name tag”: activate DTMF (touch-tone dialling) by entering a name tag.
- “Dial”
- “Call”
- “Re-dialing”
- “Help”
- “Cancel”

Example of a Dialogue

User: Press the / button if a telephone call is active.

User: “Send.”

Voice output: “Please, say the number to send.”

(for number input information, see the dialogue example for “Making a Call Using a Telephone Number” earlier in this section)

User: “Send.”

Re-dialing

The “Re-dialing” command re-dials the last number dialed.

Saving a Name Tag

The “Save” command is used to store a telephone number in the telephone book under as a name tag.

The name entered must be repeated once. The pitch and pronunciation must be as identical as possible for both name inputs, otherwise the voice control will reject the inputs.

A maximum of 50 name tags can be stored in the telephone book.

Name tags are speaker-dependent, i.e. only the person who recorded a name tag can open it. To avoid the start of the recording of a saved name from being cut off, a short pause should be left after an input request.

To be able to use the name tag independently of the location, i.e. including other countries, all telephone numbers should be entered with a “plus” character and a country code.

Available commands:

- “Save”: the inputs are accepted.
- “Re-dialing”: the last input is repeated.
- “Help”
- “Cancel”

Example of a Dialogue

User: “Save.”

Voice output: “Please, say the number to save.”

User: Say number to save.

(for number input information, see the dialogue example for “Making a Call Using a Telephone Number” earlier in this section)

User: “Save.”

User: “Name Tag” (give name tag).

Voice output: “Please, repeat the name tag to confirm.”

User: “Name Tag”

Voice output: “Saving the name tag.”

Deleting a Name Tag

The “Delete” command is used to delete a previously saved name tag.

Available commands:

- “Yes”
- “No”
- “Help”
- “Cancel”

Listening to Stored Name Tags

The “Directory” command is used to listen to all stored name tags.

Available commands:

- “Call”: the telephone number of the voice tag last read aloud is selected.
- “Delete”: the entry of the voice tag last read aloud is deleted.

Trademarks and License Agreements

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks and DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. All Rights Reserved.

Manufactured under license from Dolby® Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

"Made for iPod" means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.

iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

✍ NOTES

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Automatic Climate Control System 8-1
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 8-5

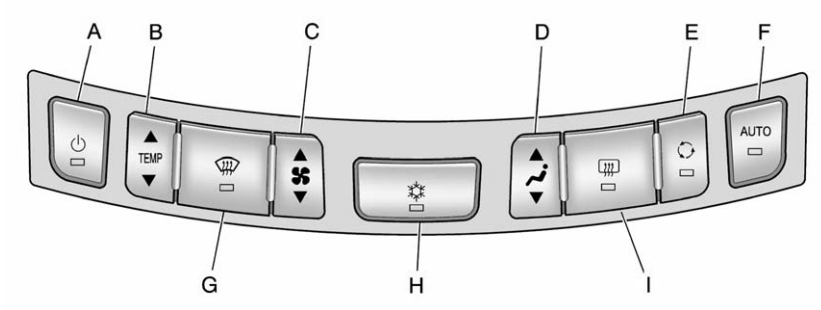
Air Vents
Air Vents 8-10

Maintenance
Air Intake 8-11
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 8-11

Climate Control Systems

Automatic Climate Control System

For vehicles with this system, it controls the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



A. Power
B. Temperature Control
C. Fan Control
D. Air Delivery Mode Control
E. Recirculation
F. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
G. Defrost
H. Air Conditioning
I. Rear Window Defogger

Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When the AUTO indicator light is on, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode, fan speed, recirculation, or air conditioning setting is adjusted, the AUTO indicator turns off and the selected settings will appear on the display.

To place the system in automatic mode do the following:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilize. Adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press ⟲ to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

▲ TEMP ▼ (Temperature Control): Press to increase or decrease the temperature.

Manual Operation

⏻ (Power): Press to turn the fan on or off.

▲ ✤ ▼ (Fan Control): Press to increase or decrease the fan speed. The fan speed setting appears on the main display. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

▲ ▼ (Air Delivery Mode Control): Press to change the direction of the airflow. The current mode appears in the display screen. Pressing either button cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

(Tri-Level): Air is divided between the windshield, instrument panel, and floor outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets.

(Defog): Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield and floor outlets.

(Defrost): Clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield. Selecting defrost will disable automatic control.

For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windshield before defrosting.

(Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. If the fan is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioning system will not run.

Pressing this button cancels automatic air conditioning and turns off the air conditioner. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs automatically as needed. When the indicator light is on, the air conditioner runs automatically to cool the air inside the vehicle or to dry the air needed to defog the windshield faster.

(Recirculation): Press to alternate between recirculating air inside the vehicle or pulling in outside air. When the indicator light is on, air is being recirculated inside the vehicle. This helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle or prevent outside air and odors from entering.

Pressing this button cancels automatic recirculation. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and recirculation runs automatically as needed.

Rear Window Defogger

(Rear Window Defogger): Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off.

The rear window defogger turns off automatically after about 10 minutes. If turned on again it runs for about five minutes before turning off. The defogger can also be turned off by turning the ignition to ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF.

The rear window defogger can be set to automatic operation. See “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*. When auto rear defog is selected, the rear window defogger turns on automatically when the interior temperature is cold and the outside temperature is about 4°C (40°F) and below. The auto rear defogger turns off automatically after about 10 minutes, or after five minutes if the outside temperature is not as cold.

For vehicles with heated outside rearview mirrors, they turn on when the rear window defogger button is on and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror. See *Heated Mirrors on page 2-18*.

Notice: **Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windshield and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window defogger grid and affect your radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.**

Remote Start Climate Control Operation (If Equipped): When the vehicle is started remotely, the climate control system will use the last setting before the vehicle shut off. If automatic operation was set, the fan speed will adjust to maximize heating or cooling.
If manual operation was set, the fan speed will be limited to the last setting. In extreme temperatures, the system may not be able to heat or cool the vehicle to the preset temperature during the remote start run time.

The rear window defogger turns on if it is cold outside.

Sensor

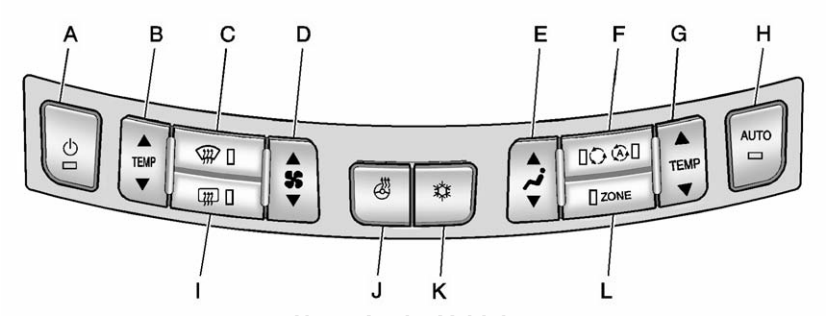
The solar sensor, located on top of the instrument panel near the windshield, monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

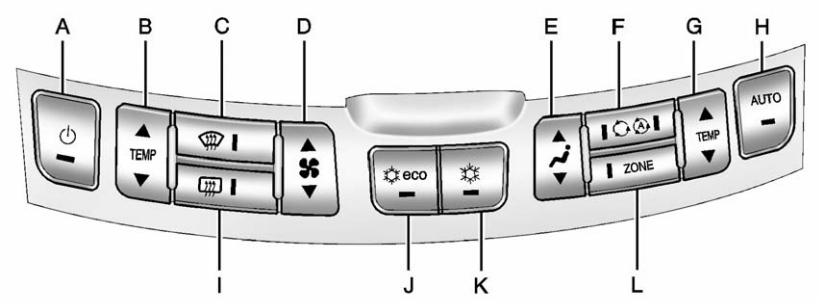
Dual Automatic Climate Control System

For vehicles with this system, it controls the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



Non-eAssist Vehicles

A. Power
B. Driver Temperature Control
C. Defrost
D. Fan Control
E. Air Delivery Mode Control
F. Recirculation/Automatic Recirculation
G. Passenger Temperature Control
H. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
I. Rear Window Defogger
J. Heated Steering Wheel
K. Air Conditioning
L. ZONE



eAssist Vehicles

A. Power
B. Driver Temperature Control
C. Defrost
D. Fan Control
E. Air Delivery Mode Control
F. Recirculation/Automatic Recirculation
G. Passenger Temperature Control
H. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
I. Rear Window Defogger
J. Eco Air Conditioning
K. Comfort Air Conditioning
L. ZONE

Climate Control Influence on eAssist Operation and Fuel Economy (If Equipped)

The climate control system is dependent upon other vehicle systems for heat and power input. Certain climate control settings can lead to higher fuel usage and/or fewer auto stops.

The following are climate control settings that use more fuel:

- Comfort air conditioning mode.
- The Defrost mode.
- Extreme temperature settings, such as 15°C (60°F) or 32°C (90°F).
- High fan speed settings.

To help reduce fuel usage:

- Use the full automatic control as described under “Automatic Operation”.
- Use eco air conditioning, instead of the comfort air conditioning.

- Select a temperature setting that is higher in hot weather and lower in cold weather.
- Turn off the air conditioning when it is not needed.
- Only use defrost to clear the windows.

Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When the AUTO indicator light is on, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode, fan speed, recirculation, or air conditioning setting is adjusted, the AUTO indicator turns off and the selected settings will appear on the display.

To place the system in automatic mode do the following:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilize. Adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press ⟲ to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

▲ TEMP ▼ (Driver and Passenger Temperature Control): The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Press to increase or decrease the temperature.

ZONE: Press to link all climate zone settings to the driver settings. The ZONE indicator light will turn off. When the passenger settings are adjusted, the ZONE indicator light is on.

Manual Operation

⏻ (Power): Press to turn the fan off or on.

▲ ✣ ▼ (Fan Control): Press to increase or decrease the fan speed. The fan speed setting appears on the main display. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan is controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

▲ ⇗ ▼ (Air Delivery Mode Control): Press to change the direction of the airflow. The current mode appears in the display screen. Pressing either button cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow is controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

(Tri-Level): Air is divided between the windshield, instrument panel, and floor outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets.

(Defog): Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield and floor outlets.

(Defrost): Clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield.

For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windshield before defrosting.

For eAssist vehicles that have the auto defog feature, auto stops can occur in defrost mode. In this mode, the auto stops are shorter and less frequent than other air delivery modes to prevent instant fogging.

(Comfort Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. If the climate control system is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioner will not run.

Pressing this button cancels automatic air conditioning and turns off the air conditioner. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs automatically as needed. When the indicator light is on, the air conditioner runs automatically to cool the air inside the vehicle or to dry the air needed to defog the windshield faster.

For eAssist vehicles, an auto stop may occur if the climate control system determines the a/c compressor can be shut off and still maintain comfort levels with minimal windshield fogging.

Eco (Eco Air Conditioning, If Equipped): This setting balances fuel economy and air conditioning comfort. In warm weather conditions, auto stops may occur more frequently and the vehicle interior may be warmer as compared to the comfort air conditioning. The eco a/c setting allows higher humidity inside the vehicle and window fogging before the engine restarts.

Pressing the button during an auto stop will restart the engine to prevent window fogging. To reach comfort levels quickly during an auto stop, the engine will restart if the air conditioner is off and the

AUTO, eco ☼, or Comfort ☼ is selected. The engine also restarts if the ⏻ is pressed on and the system is set to AUTO, eco ☼, or Comfort ☼.

If temperature controls are adjusted cooler by more than 1°C (1°F) during an auto stop, the engine will restart to ensure that comfort is reached.

/ (Recirculation/Auto Recirculation): Press to change to automatic control of air recirculation inside the vehicle. When the auto recirculation indicator light is on, the air is automatically recirculated as needed to help quickly cool the air inside the vehicle.

In auto recirculation control, the Air Quality Control system may operate when pollution is detected. To adjust the sensitivity of the Air Quality Control, see "Climate and Air Quality" under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

When the indicator light is on, air is recirculated inside the vehicle. If both indicator lights are off, outside air will flow into the vehicle.

Press AUTO or to return to automatic operation.

Auto Defog: The climate control system may have a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. The fan speed may slightly increase to help prevent fogging. If the climate control system does not detect possible window fogging, it returns to normal operation. To turn Auto Defog off or on, see "Climate and Air Quality" under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*.

Rear Window Defogger

(Rear Window Defogger): Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off.

The rear window defogger turns off automatically after about 10 minutes. If turned on again it runs for about five minutes before turning off. The defogger can also be turned off by turning the ignition to ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF.

The rear window defogger can be set to automatic operation. See "Climate and Air Quality" under *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43*. When auto rear defog is selected, the rear window defogger turns on automatically when the interior temperature is cold and the outside temperature is about 4°C (40°F) and below. The auto rear defogger turns off automatically after about 10 minutes, or after five minutes if the outside temperature is not as cold.

For vehicles with heated outside rearview mirrors, they turn on when the rear window defogger button is on and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror. See *Heated Mirrors on page 2-18*.

Notice: **Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windshield and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window defogger grid and affect your radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.**

(Heated Steering Wheel): For vehicles with this feature, press to turn on or off. See *Heated Steering Wheel on page 5-3*.

Remote Start Climate Control Operation (If Equipped): When the vehicle is started remotely, the climate control system will use the last setting before the vehicle shut off. If automatic operation was set, the fan speed will adjust to maximize heating or cooling. If manual operation was set, the fan speed will be limited to the last setting. In extreme temperatures, the system may not be able to heat or cool the vehicle to the preset temperature during the remote start run time.

The rear window defogger turns on if it is cold outside.

Sensor

The solar sensor, located on top of the instrument panel near the windshield, monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

Air Vents

Use the louvers located on the air vents to change the direction of the airflow.

To open the vent, move the thumbwheel to ≋. To close the vent, move the thumbwheel to ⊠.

For vehicles with eAssist, there is a battery cooling air vent located on the shelf behind the rear passenger seats below the rear window. Keep this air inlet clear from items that may block air flow. Proper airflow is required to keep the eAssist battery and control system cool.

Operation Tips

- Keep all outlets open whenever possible for best system performance.
- Keep the path under all seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system.

Maintenance

Air Intake

Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from the air intake at the base of the windshield that can block the flow of air into the vehicle.

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter removes dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle.

The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. See *Maintenance Schedule on page 11-3* for replacement intervals. For more information, see your dealer.

✍ NOTES

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Distracted Driving 9-2
Defensive Driving 9-3
Drunk Driving 9-3
Control of a Vehicle 9-4
Braking 9-4
Steering 9-4
Off-Road Recovery 9-6
Loss of Control 9-6
Driving on Wet Roads 9-7
Highway Hypnosis 9-8
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-8
Winter Driving 9-9
If the Vehicle Is Stuck 9-11
Vehicle Load Limits 9-12

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In 9-17
Ignition Positions (Key Access) 9-18
Ignition Positions (Keyless Access) 9-20
Starting the Engine 9-22
Engine Heater 9-26
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 9-27
Shifting Into Park 9-27
Shifting out of Park 9-29
Parking over Things That Burn 9-29

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 9-30
Running the Vehicle While Parked 9-30

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 9-31
Manual Mode 9-33

Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 9-34

Brakes
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 9-35
Parking Brake 9-36
Brake Assist 9-38
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 9-38

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control System (TCS) 9-38
StabiliTrak® System 9-40
Limited-Slip Differential 9-41
Selective Ride Control 9-41

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 9-42

Object Detection Systems
Ultrasonic Parking Assist 9-44
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 9-46
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-49

Fuel
Fuel 9-52
Recommended Fuel 9-53
Gasoline Specifications (U.S. and Canada Only) 9-53
California Fuel Requirements 9-53
Fuels in Foreign Countries . . . 9-53
Fuel Additives 9-53
Filling the Tank 9-55
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 9-56

Towing
General Towing Information 9-57
Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips 9-57
Trailer Towing (Except eAssist) 9-61
Trailer Towing (eAssist) 9-62
Towing Equipment 9-62

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-63

Driving Information

Distracted Driving

Distraction comes in many forms and can take your focus from the task of driving. Exercise good judgment and do not let other activities divert your attention away from the road. Many local governments have enacted laws regarding driver distraction. Become familiar with the local laws in your area.

To avoid distracted driving, always keep your eyes on the road, hands on the wheel, and mind on the drive.

- Do not use a phone in demanding driving situations. Use a hands-free method to place or receive necessary phone calls.
- Watch the road. Do not read, take notes, or look up information on phones or other electronic devices.
- Designate a front seat passenger to handle potential distractions.
- Become familiar with vehicle features before driving, such as programming favorite radio stations and adjusting climate control and seat settings. Program all trip information into any navigation device prior to driving.
- Wait until the vehicle is parked to retrieve items that have fallen to the floor.
- Stop or park the vehicle to tend to children.
- Keep pets in an appropriate carrier or restraint.
- Avoid stressful conversations while driving, whether with a passenger or on a cell phone.

⚠ WARNING

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Refer to the infotainment section for more information on using that system, including pairing and using a cell phone.

If equipped, refer to the navigation manual for information on that system, including pairing and using a cell phone.

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means “always expect the unexpected.” The first step in driving defensively is to wear the safety belt. See *Safety Belts on page 3-13*.

- Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready.
- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

Drunk Driving

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

⚠ WARNING

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking.

Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft), which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. Doing so could make the pedal harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Steering

Electric Power Steering

If your vehicle has electric power steering it does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort.

If the steering wheel is turned in either direction several times until it stops, or it is held until it is stopped for an extended time, power steering assist should return shortly after a few normal steering movements.

See specific vehicle steering messages under *Vehicle Messages on page 5-35*.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

Variable Effort Steering

Some vehicles have a steering system that varies the amount of effort required to steer the vehicle in relation to the speed of the vehicle.

The amount of steering effort required is less at slower speeds to make the vehicle more maneuverable and easier to park. At faster speeds, the steering effort increases to provide a sport-like feel to the steering. This provides maximum control and stability.

If the vehicle seems harder to steer than normal when parking or driving slowly, there may be a problem with the system. You will still have power steering, but steering will be stiffer than normal at slow speeds. See your dealer for service.

Hydraulic Power Steering

If your vehicle has hydraulic power steering, it may require maintenance. See *Power Steering Fluid (2.4L L4 Engine) on page 10-21* or *Power Steering Fluid (3.6L V6 Engine) on page 10-21*.

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or the power steering system is not functioning, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort. See your dealer if there is a problem.

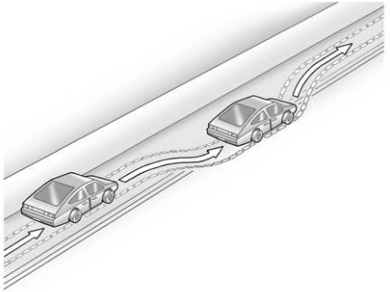
Curve Tips

- Take curves at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a curve.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the curve
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the curve before accelerating gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.
- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

Off-Road Recovery



The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving. Follow these tips:

1. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer the vehicle so that it straddles the edge of the pavement.
2. Turn the steering wheel about one-eighth of a turn, until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge.
3. Then turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Loss of Control

Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid — wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid — too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force.
- Acceleration Skid — too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to slide, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out. Be ready for a second skid if it occurs.
- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance can be longer and vehicle control can be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 10-47*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park the vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep the interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving — scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not shift down, the brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ WARNING

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down and they could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear when going downhill.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Be alert on top of hills, something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 0°C (32°F) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

The *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 9-35* improves vehicle stability during hard stops on slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control on slippery surfaces.

Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use the *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ WARNING

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.
- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-30*.

Run the engine for short periods only as needed to keep warm, but be careful.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat. Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.

If the Vehicle Is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 55 km/h (35 mph).

For information about using tire chains on the vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 10-68*.

Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-99*.

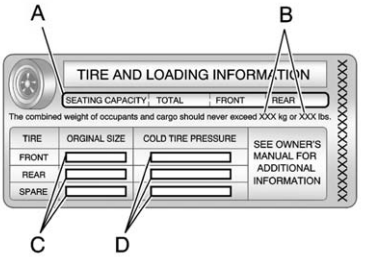
Vehicle Load Limits

It is very important to know how much weight the vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on the vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification label.

⚠ WARNING

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle-specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). The Tire and Loading Information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the tire size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires on page 10-47* and *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.

There is also important loading information on the Certification label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle. See “Certification Label” later in this section.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400 − 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

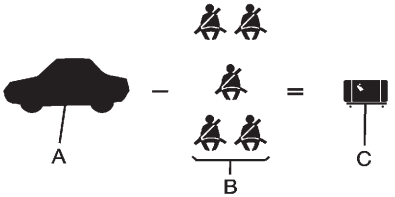
See *Trailer Towing (Except eAssist) on page 9-61* or *Trailer Towing (eAssist) on page 9-62* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules, and trailering tips.

Example 1

A. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).

B. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2 = 136 kg (300 lbs).

C. Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs).

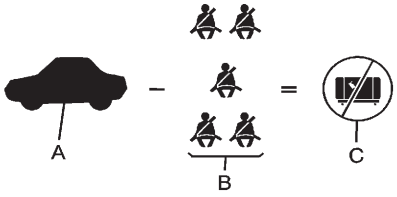


Example 2

A. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).

B. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5 = 340 kg (750 lbs).

C. Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs).



Example 3

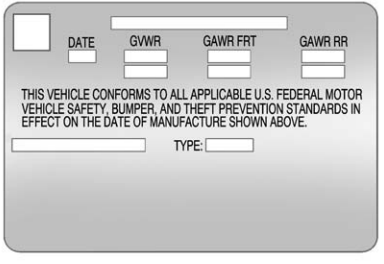
A. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).

B. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs) × 5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).

C. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs).

Refer to the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about the vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed the vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification Label



Label Example

A vehicle-specific Certification label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). The label tells the gross weight capacity of the vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo. Never exceed the GVWR for the vehicle, or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle.

And, if there is a heavy load, it should be spread out. See “Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit” earlier in this section.

⚠ WARNING

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

If you put things inside the vehicle — like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else — they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

⚠ WARNING

Things inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. In the cargo area, put them as far forward as possible. Try to spread the weight evenly.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- Secure loose items in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless needed.

Starting and Operating

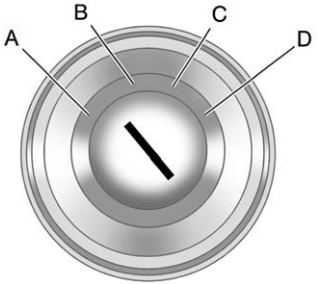
New Vehicle Break-In

Notice: **The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:**

- **Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 805 km (500 mi). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.**
- **During the first 1 000 km (600 mi), avoid using more than moderate acceleration in lower gears and avoid vehicle speeds above 110 km/h (68 mph).**
- **Between the first 1 000 km (600 mi) and 5 000 km (3,000 mi), heavy acceleration in lower gears can be used. Vehicle speeds above 110 km/h (68 mph) should be limited to five minutes per use.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 322 km (200 mi) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-57* for the trailer towing capabilities of your vehicle and more information.**

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

Ignition Positions (Key Access)



The ignition switch has four different positions.

Notice: **Using a tool to force the key to turn in the ignition could cause damage to the switch or break the key. Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in, and turn it only with your hand. If the key cannot be turned by hand, see your dealer.**

The key must be fully extended to start the vehicle.

To shift out of P (Park), turn the ignition to ON/RUN and apply the brake pedal.

A (STOPPING THE ENGINE/ LOCK/OFF): When the vehicle is stopped, turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF to turn the engine off. Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-27* for more information.

This is the only position from which the key can be removed. This locks the ignition and automatic transmission.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop, shift to P (Park), and turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF. On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position.
4. Set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-36*.

⚠ WARNING

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, turn the ignition to ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition switch can bind in the LOCK/OFF position with the wheels turned off center. If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left while turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If this does not work, then the vehicle needs service.

B (ACC/ACCESSORY): This position provides power to some of the electrical accessories. It unlocks the ignition. To move the key from ACC/ACCESSORY to LOCK/OFF, the shift lever must be in P (Park).

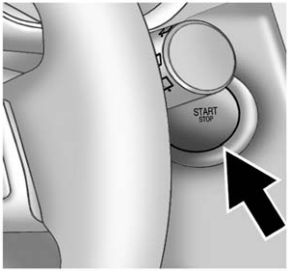
C (ON/RUN): The ignition switch stays in this position when the engine is running. This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories, including the ventilation fan and 12-volt power outlet, as well as to display some warning and indicator lights. This position can also be used for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. The transmission is also unlocked in this position.

The battery could be drained if the key is left in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off. The vehicle might not restart if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

D (START): This position starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch will return to ON/RUN for normal driving.

A warning tone sounds when the driver door is opened when the ignition is still in ACC/ACCESSORY and the key is in the ignition.

Ignition Positions (Keyless Access)



The vehicle has an electronic keyless ignition with pushbutton start.

Pressing the button cycles it through three modes, ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN/START, and Stopping the Engine/OFF.

The transmitter must be in the vehicle for the system to operate. If the pushbutton start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference to the keyless access system. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4* for more information.

To shift out of P (Park), the vehicle must be in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN and the brake pedal must be applied.

Stopping the Engine/OFF (No LED Lights): When the vehicle is stopped, press the engine START/STOP button once to turn the engine off.

If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-27* for more information.

If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to ACC/ACCESSORY and display the message SHIFT TO PARK in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Transmission Messages on page 5-42* for more information. When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition system will switch to OFF.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.

2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop, shift to P (Park), and turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF. On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position.
4. Set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-36*.

⚠ WARNING

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, switch the ignition to ACC/ACCESSORY.

ACC/ACCESSORY (Amber LED Light): This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button one time without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition will switch from ACC/ACCESSORY to OFF after five minutes to prevent battery rundown.

ON/RUN/START (Green LED Light): This mode is for driving and starting. With the ignition off, and the brake pedal applied, pressing the button once will place the ignition system in ON/RUN/START. Once engine cranking begins, release the button. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts. See *Starting the Engine on page 9-22* for more information. The ignition will then remain in ON/RUN.

Service Only Mode

This power mode is available for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal not applied, pressing and holding the button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Only Mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in ON/RUN, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Service Only Mode. Push the button again to turn the vehicle off.

Starting the Engine

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Notice: **Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.**

Notice: **The engine is designed to work with the electronics in the vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you do not, the engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Starting Procedure (Key Access)

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the ignition.

   The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

   The vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ignition key is turned to the START position, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the key is held in START for many seconds, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF.

Notice: **Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.**

2. If the engine does not start after five to 10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below −18°C or 0°F), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START, or press the START button, for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds

between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the key or button, and the accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Starting Procedure (Keyless Access)

1. If the vehicle has the keyless access system, the transmitter must be in the vehicle. Put your foot on the brake pedal and push the START button. When the engine begins cranking, let go of the button.

   The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

   If the transmitter is not in the vehicle or something is interfering with the transmitter, the Driver Information Center (DIC) will display a message. See *Key and Lock Messages on page 5-39* for more information.

   If the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs replacing, the DIC will display a message. The vehicle can still be driven. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” in *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-4* for more information.

   The vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the START button is pressed, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the button is pressed for many seconds, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by pressing the START button a second time.

Notice: **Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.**

2. If the engine does not start after five to 10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below −18°C or 0°F), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START, or press the START button, for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the key or button, and the accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

eAssist Automatic Engine Start/Stop

⚠ WARNING

Exiting the vehicle, without first shifting into P (Park), may cause the vehicle to move, you or others may be injured. Because the vehicle has the automatic engine start/stop feature, the vehicle's engine might seem to be shut off; however, once the brake pedal is released, the engine will start up again.

Shift to P (Park) and turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF, before exiting the vehicle.

Vehicles with eAssist have an automatic engine start/stop feature. After the engine is started and has reached operating temperature, the auto stop feature may cause the engine to turn off when the brakes are applied and the vehicle comes to a complete stop. The vehicle may remain in auto stop for up to two minutes. When the brake is released or the accelerator pedal applied, the engine will start. The engine will continue to run until the next auto stop.

AUTO STOP on the tachometer signifies that the engine is in auto stop mode. See *Tachometer on page 5-12* for more information. When the vehicle is turned off, the tachometer will move to OFF. If the driver door is opened while in auto stop mode, a chime will sound.

To restart the engine during auto stop, release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal. The engine starts immediately. The vehicle continues to run until the next stop.

There are several conditions which may prevent an auto stop or cause an auto start.

The Engine Will Remain Running When:

- The engine, transmission, or high voltage battery is not warmed up yet.
- The outside temperature is less than −20°C (−4°F).
- The air conditioning or defrost system need the compressor to maintain vehicle comfort. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5* for more information.
- The shift lever is in P (Park), N (Neutral), R (Reverse), or M (Manual Mode).
- The high voltage battery pack charge is low.
- The hood is not fully closed.
- Brake pedal pressure is high.
- If the MIL is on, auto stop may be prevented.

The Engine Will Restart When:

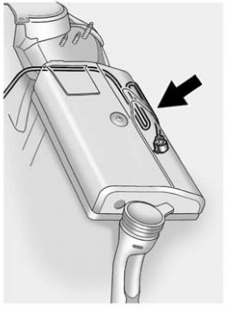
- The brake pedal is released.
- The accelerator pedal is applied.
- Shifting out of D (Drive) to any other gear.
- If the eco air conditioning button is selected, the duration of the auto stop will depend on the outside temperature. This economy mode improves fuel economy by limiting the effects of the air conditioning. The warmer it is outside, the shorter the time before the engine is restarted to provide cabin cooling.
- The climate control system is turned from off to normal air conditioning or defrost. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5* for more information.
- The engine is required to run for either heater or climate control performance. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-5* for more information.
- The high voltage battery pack charge is low and requires recharging.
- Auto stop time is greater than two minutes.
- The hood is opened.

Engine Heater

The engine coolant heater, if available, can help in cold weather conditions at or below −18°C (0°F) for easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up. Plug in the coolant heater at least four hours before starting the vehicle. An internal thermostat in the plug end of the cord will prevent engine coolant heater operation at temperatures above −18°C (0°F).

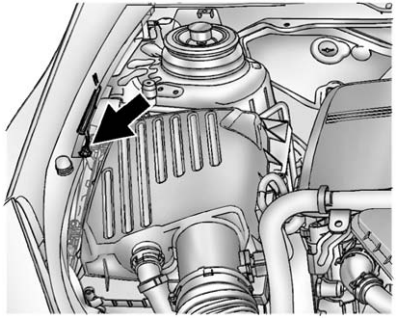
To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord.



3.6L V6 Engine

The electrical cord is located on the driver side of the engine compartment, between the fender and the engine compartment fuse block on vehicles with a six cylinder engine.



2.4L L4 Engine

The electrical cord is located on the passenger side of the engine compartment, between the fender and the air cleaner on vehicles with a four cylinder engine.

3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

⚠ WARNING

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts.

The length of time the heater should remain plugged in depends on several factors. Ask a dealer in the area where you will be parking the vehicle for the best advice on this.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These vehicle accessories can be used for up to 10 minutes after the engine is turned off:

- Audio System
- Power Windows
- Sunroof (If Equipped)
- Auxiliary Power Outlet

Power to the audio system will continue to operate for up to 10 minutes or until the driver door is opened.

Power to the power windows and sunroof will continue to operate for up to 10 minutes or until any door is opened.

All of these features will work when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY.

Shifting Into Park

⚠ WARNING

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow.

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake.

   See *Parking Brake on page 9-36* for more information.

2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by pushing the lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the ignition off.

Leaving the Vehicle with the Engine Running

⚠ WARNING

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, be sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you have moved the shift lever into P (Park), hold down the regular brake pedal. See if you can move the shift lever away from P (Park) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

Torque Lock

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). To find out how, see "Shifting Into P (Park)" listed previously.

If torque lock does occur, your vehicle may need to be pushed uphill by another vehicle to relieve the parking pawl pressure, so you can shift out of P (Park).

If you are towing a trailer and parking on a hill, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-57*.

Shifting out of Park

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock

The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. The shift lock control system is designed to:

- Prevent ignition key removal unless the shift lever is in P (Park).
- Prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN and the brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9-volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting (On-board with eAssist Only) on page 10-94* or *Jump Starting (with or without eAssist) on page 10-95*.

If the shift lever cannot be moved out of P (Park):

1. Apply and maintain the regular brakes.
2. Turn the ignition to the ON/RUN position. See *Ignition Positions (Key Access) on page 9-18* or *Ignition Positions (Keyless Access) on page 9-20* for more information.
3. Let up on the shift lever and make sure the shift lever is pushed all the way into P (Park).
4. Press the shift lever button.
5. Move the shift lever into the desired gear.

If you still cannot move the shift lever from P (Park), consult your dealer or a professional towing service.

Parking over Things That Burn

⚠ WARNING

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ WARNING

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-30*.

⚠ WARNING

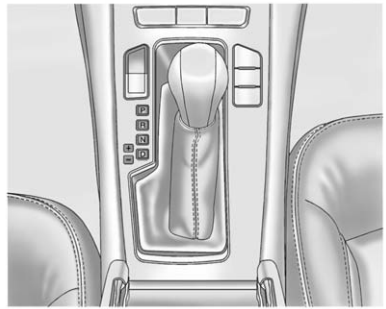
It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the automatic transmission shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park).

Follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-27*.

If parking on a hill and pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-57*.

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission has a shift lever located on the console between the seats.



P (Park): This position locks the front wheels. It is the best position to use when starting the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ WARNING

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-27*. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-57*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system.

The regular brake must be fully applied first and then the shift lever button pressed before shifting from P (Park) when the ignition key is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever, then push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting out of Park on page 9-29*.

R (Reverse): Use this gear to back up.

Notice: **Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.**

To rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission, see *If the Vehicle Is Stuck on page 9-11*.

N (Neutral): In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only. Also, use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Notice: **Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.**

D (Drive): This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If more power is needed for passing, and the vehicle is:

- Going less than 56 km/h (35 mph), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 56 km/h (35 mph) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

Notice: **If the vehicle seems to accelerate slowly or not shift gears when you go faster, and you continue to drive the vehicle that way, you could damage the transmission. Have the vehicle serviced right away. You can drive in L (Low) when you are driving less than 56 km/h (35 mph) and D (Drive) for higher speeds until then.**

Manual Mode: This position is shown on the shift lever as a +/−. It allows the driver to select the gears appropriate for current driving conditions. See *Manual Mode on page 9-33* for more information.

Manual Mode

Driver Shift Control (DSC)

Notice: **Driving with the engine at a high rpm without upshifting while using Driver Shift Control (DSC), could damage the vehicle. Always upshift when necessary while using DSC.**

DSC allows you to shift an automatic transmission similar to a manual transmission. To use the DSC feature:

With Selective Ride Control

1. Move the shift lever to the left from D (Drive).

   The vehicle will be in Sport Mode. The gear indicator in the DIC will still display a D for Drive, and the SPORT MODE ON message will be displayed momentarily. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27*. When you are in Sport Mode, the vehicle will still shift automatically, but chassis tuning is modified. See *Selective Ride Control on page 9-41*.
   If you move the shift lever forward or rearward, the transmission will enter Manual Mode, and the DIC gear indicator will change to an M followed by a number representing the gear the vehicle is currently in.

2. In Manual Mode, press the shift lever forward to upshift or rearward to downshift.

Without Selective Ride Control

1. Move the shift lever to the left from D (Drive).

   The transmission will enter Manual Mode. The DIC gear indicator will change to an M followed by a number representing the gear the vehicle is currently in.

2. In Manual Mode, press the shift lever forward to upshift or rearward to downshift.

Uplevel Display Shown, Base Model Similar

The display on the instrument panel cluster will show which gear the vehicle is in. The number indicates the requested gear range when moving the shift lever forward or rearward.

The transmission will only allow you to shift into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm). The transmission will not automatically shift to the next lower gear if the engine rpm is too high, nor to the next higher gear when the maximum engine rpm is reached.

While in the DSC mode, the transmission will automatically downshift when the vehicle comes to a stop. This will allow for more power during take-off.

When accelerating the vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, you may want to shift into second gear. A higher gear allows you to gain more traction on slippery surfaces.

Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive

Vehicles with this feature always send engine power to all four wheels. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

When using a compact spare tire on an AWD vehicle, the system automatically detects the compact spare and disables AWD. To restore AWD operation and prevent excessive wear on the system, replace the compact spare with a full-size tire as soon as possible. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 10-93* for more information.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has the Antilock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the engine is started and the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.

If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-21*.

If driving safely on a wet road and it becomes necessary to slam on the brakes and continue braking to avoid a sudden obstacle, a computer senses that the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help the driver steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

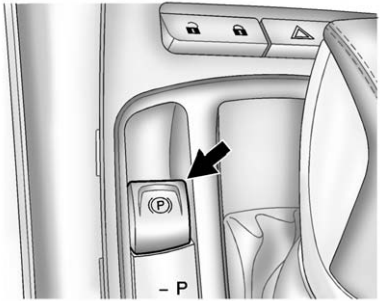
Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You might hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate, but this is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Parking Brake



The vehicle has an Electric Parking Brake (EPB). The switch for the EPB is in the center console. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB system when the engine is not running.

The system has a parking brake status light and a parking brake warning light. See *Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-21*. There are also three Driver Information Center (DIC) messages. See *Brake System Messages on page 5-36* for more information. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the parking brake status light to ensure that the parking brake is applied.

EPB Apply

The EPB can be applied any time the vehicle is stopped. The EPB is applied by momentarily lifting up on the EPB switch. Once fully applied, the parking brake status light will be on. While the brake is being applied, the status light will flash until full apply is reached. If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the parking brake status light is flashing. See your dealer. See *Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-21* for more information.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is in motion, a chime will sound, and a DIC message will be displayed. See *Brake System Messages on page 5-36*. The vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held in the up position. Releasing the EPB switch during deceleration will release the parking brake. If the switch is held in the up position until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

If the parking brake status light flashes continuously, the EPB is only partially applied or released, or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will be displayed. See *Brake System Messages on page 5-36*. If this light flashes continuously, release the EPB, and attempt to apply it again. If this light continues to flash, do not drive the vehicle. See your dealer.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To apply the EPB when this light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it in the up position. Full application of the parking brake by the EPB system may take longer than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light remains on. If the parking brake warning light is on, see your dealer.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release

To release the EPB, place the ignition in the ON/RUN position, apply and hold the brake pedal, and push down momentarily on the EPB switch. If you attempt to release the EPB without the brake pedal applied, a chime will sound, and a DIC message will be displayed. See *Brake System Messages on page 5-36*. The EPB is released when the parking brake status light is off.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To release the EPB when this light is on, push down on the EPB switch and hold it in the down position. EPB release may take longer than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light is off. If the light is on, see your dealer.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

For maximum EPB force when towing a trailer or parking on a hill, pull the EPB switch twice. If you are towing a trailer and parking on a hill, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-57* for more information.

Brake Assist

This vehicle has a brake assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. The brake assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This vehicle has a Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a grade. This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After the driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a grade, HSA will be automatically activated. During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a grade, HSA holds the braking pressure to ensure that there is no rolling. The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the two-second window. It will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse).

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) that limits wheel slip. The system operates if it senses that one or both of the front wheels are slipping or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system reduces engine power and/or applies brake pressure to the slipping wheel(s).

The system may be heard or felt while it is working, but this is normal.

TCS automatically comes on whenever the vehicle is started. To limit wheel slip, especially in slippery road conditions, the system should always be left on. But, TCS can be turned off if needed.

flashes to indicate that TCS is active. See *Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light on page 5-23* for more information.

If there is a problem detected with TCS, SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL is displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-40*. When this message is displayed and comes on and stays on, the vehicle is safe to drive but the system is not operational. Driving should be adjusted accordingly.

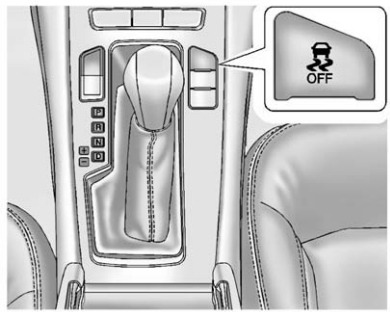
If comes on and stays on, reset the system.

To reset:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

If still comes on and stays on, the vehicle needs service.

Notice: **Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle's driveline could be damaged.**



TCS can be turned off by pressing and releasing the TCS/StabiliTrak button. When TCS is turned off, comes on, and the appropriate DIC message also displays. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-40*. With TCS turned off, the system does not limit wheel slip. Driving should be adjusted accordingly. See *Traction Off Light on page 5-22* for more information.

Press and release the TCS/StabiliTrak button again to turn the system back on.

It may be necessary to turn the system off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, or snow and rocking the vehicle is required. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck on page 9-11* for more information. See also *Winter Driving on page 9-9* for information on using TCS when driving in snowy or icy conditions.

Adding non-GM accessories can affect the vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-3* for more information.

StabiliTrak® System

The vehicle may have a vehicle stability enhancement system called StabiliTrak. It is an advanced computer-controlled system that assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

StabiliTrak activates when the computer senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. StabiliTrak selectively applies braking pressure to the vehicle brakes to help steer the vehicle in the intended direction.

StabiliTrak comes on automatically whenever the vehicle is started. To assist with directional control of the vehicle, the system should always be left on.

When StabiliTrak activates, flashes on the instrument panel. A noise may be heard or vibration may be felt in the brake pedal. This is normal. Continue to steer the vehicle in the intended direction.

See *Traction Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak® Light on page 5-23* for more information.

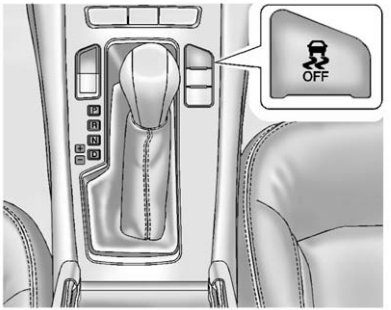
If a problem is detected with StabiliTrak, SERVICE STABILITRAK is displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-40*. When this message is displayed and comes on and stays on, the vehicle is safe to drive but the system is not operational. Driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If comes on and stays on, reset the system.

To reset:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

If still comes on and stays on, the vehicle needs service.



- To turn off both StabiliTrak and TCS, press and hold the TCS/ StabiliTrak button, located on the instrument panel, until and illuminate and the appropriate DIC message is displayed. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-40*.

When StabiliTrak is turned off, the system will not assist with directional control of the vehicle or limit wheel spin. Driving should be adjusted accordingly. See *Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light on page 5-23* for more information.

- Press and release the TCS/ StabiliTrak button again to turn the system back on.

If cruise control is being used when StabiliTrak activates, cruise control will automatically disengage. Press the cruise control button to reengage when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-42* for more information.

Limited-Slip Differential

Vehicles with a limited-slip differential can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand, or gravel. It works like a standard differential most of the time, but when traction is low, this feature allows the drive wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle.

Selective Ride Control

The vehicle may have a ride control system called Selective Ride Control. The system provides the following performance benefits:

- Reduced Impact Harshness
- Improved Road Isolation
- Improved High-Speed Stability
- Improved Handling Response
- Better Control of Body Ride Motions

To switch from TOUR to SPORT mode, move the shift lever to the left while the transmission is in D (Drive).

TOUR: Use for normal city and highway driving. This setting provides a smooth, soft ride.

SPORT: Use where road conditions or personal preference demand more control. This setting provides more “feel,” or response to road conditions through increased steering effort and suspension tuning.

The setting can be changed at any time. Based on road conditions, steering wheel angle, and vehicle speed, the system automatically adjusts to provide the best handling while providing a smooth ride. The TOUR and SPORT modes will feel similar on a smooth road.

Cruise Control

With cruise control, the vehicle can maintain a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below 40 km/h (25 mph).

On vehicles with the Traction Control System (TCS) or the StabiliTrak® system, it may begin to limit wheel spin while you are using cruise control. If this happens, the cruise control will automatically disengage. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-38* or *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-40*.

⚠ WARNING

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

The cruise control buttons are located on the steering wheel.

(On/Off): Press to turn the cruise control system on and off. An indicator light will turn on or off in the instrument panel cluster.

(Cancel): Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

RES/+ (Resume/Accelerate): Move the thumbwheel up to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed or to accelerate.

SET/− (Set/Coast): Move the thumbwheel down to set the speed and activate cruise control or make the vehicle decelerate.

Setting Cruise Control

If the cruise button is on when not in use, it could get bumped and go into cruise when not desired. Keep the cruise control switch off when cruise is not being used.

1. Press to turn the cruise control system on. The indicator light in the instrument panel cluster comes on.
2. Get to the speed desired.
3. Move the thumbwheel down toward SET/− and release it. The desired set speed briefly appears in the instrument panel cluster.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied or the is pressed, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle reaches about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, move the thumbwheel up toward RES/+ briefly. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed and stays there.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Move the thumbwheel up toward RES/+ and hold it until the vehicle accelerates to the desired speed, and then release it.
- To increase the speed in small amounts, move the thumbwheel up toward RES/+ briefly, then release it. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1.6 km/h (1 mph) faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Move the thumbwheel toward SET/− and hold until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in small amounts, move the thumbwheel toward SET/− briefly and then release it. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1.6 km/h (1 mph) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previous set cruise control speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control works on hills depends upon the vehicle's speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle's speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to maintain the vehicle's speed. When the brakes are applied the cruise control shuts off.

Ending Cruise Control

There are three ways to end cruise control:

- To disengage cruise control, step lightly on the brake pedal; when cruise control disengages, the indicator light will not be lit.
- Press on the steering wheel.
- To turn off the cruise control, press on the steering wheel.

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory by pressing or if the ignition is turned off.

Object Detection Systems

Ultrasonic Parking Assist

If available, the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system assists the driver with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). URPA operates at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph). The sensors on the rear bumper detect objects up to 2.5 m (8 ft) behind the vehicle, and at least 20 cm (8 in) off the ground.

⚠ WARNING

The URPA system does not detect pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or any other objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with URPA, always check behind the vehicle and check all mirrors before backing.

How the System Works

URPA comes on automatically when the shift lever is moved into R (Reverse). A single tone sounds to indicate the system is working.

URPA operates only at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

An obstacle is indicated by audible beeps. The interval between the beeps becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 30 cm (12 in) the beeping is a continuous tone for five seconds.

To be detected, objects must be at least 20 cm (8 in) off the ground and below trunk level. Objects must also be within 2.5 m (8 ft) from the rear bumper. The distance at which objects can be detected may be less during warmer or humid weather.

Turning the System On and Off

The URPA system can be turned on and off using the park assist button located next to the shift lever.

The LED next to the park assist button lights up when the system is on and turns off when it has been disabled.

When the system is off, PARK ASSIST OFF displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC). The message disappears after a short period of time.

URPA defaults to the on setting each time the vehicle is started.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The following messages may be displayed on the DIC:

SERVICE PARK ASSIST: If this message occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

PARK ASSIST OFF: If the URPA system does not activate due to a temporary condition, this message displays on the DIC. This can occur under the following conditions:

- The driver has disabled the system.
- The ultrasonic sensors are not clean. Keep the vehicle's rear bumper free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care on page 10-102*.
- The park assist sensors are covered by frost or ice. Frost or ice can form around and behind the sensors and may not always be seen; this can occur after washing the vehicle in cold weather. The message may not clear until the frost or ice has melted.
- An object was hanging out of the trunk during the last drive cycle. Once the object is removed, URPA will return to normal operation.
- The bumper is damaged. Take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.
- Other conditions, such as vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck, are affecting system performance.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The vehicle may have a Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system. Read this entire section before using the system.

⚠ WARNING

SBZA does not detect vehicles rapidly approaching outside of the side blind zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Always check for other vehicles and use the turn signals when changing lanes.

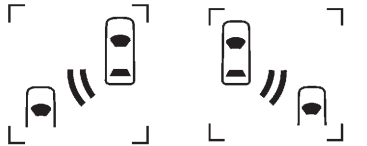
When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone, amber SBZA displays will light up in the side mirrors. This indicates that it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, always check the SBZA display, check the outside and rearview mirrors, look over your shoulder for vehicles and hazards, and use the turn signal.

SBZA Detection Zones

The SBZA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m (11 ft). This zone starts at each side mirror and goes back approximately 5.0 m (16 ft). The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m (1.5 ft) and 2.0 m (6 ft) off the ground.

The SBZA detection zones do not change if the vehicle is towing a trailer. So be extra careful when changing lanes while towing a trailer.

How the System Works



Left Side Mirror Display **Right Side Mirror Display**

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror displays will briefly come on to indicate that the system is operating. While driving forward, the left or right side mirror SBZA display will light up if a vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If you activate a turn signal and a vehicle has been detected on the same side, the SBZA display will flash to give you extra warning not to change lanes.

SBZA displays do not come on while the vehicle is approaching or passing other vehicles. At speeds greater than 32 km/h (20 mph), SBZA displays may come on when a vehicle you have passed remains in or drops back into the detection zone.

SBZA can be disabled through vehicle personalization. See *Vehicle Personalization on page 5-43* for more information. If the SBZA is disabled by the driver, the SBZA mirror displays will not light up during normal driving.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions. The system does not need to be serviced due to an occasional missed alert. The number of missed alerts will increase with increased rainfall or road spray.

If the SBZA displays do not light up when the system is on and vehicles are in the blind zone, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

SBZA is designed to ignore stationary objects; however, the system may occasionally light up due to guard rails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other stationary objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA does not operate when the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care on page 10-102*. If the infotainment display still shows the SIDE BLIND ZONE SYS. UNAVAILABLE message after cleaning the bumper, see your dealer.

The SBZA displays may remain on if a trailer is attached to the vehicle, or a bicycle or object is extending out to either side of the vehicle.

When SBZA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the driver will not be able to turn SBZA back on using vehicle personalization. The On option will not be selectable if the conditions for normal system operation are not met. Until normal operating conditions for SBZA are met, you should not rely upon SBZA while driving.

SBZA Error Messages

The following messages may appear on the infotainment display:

SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT SYSTEM OFF: This message indicates that the driver has turned the system off.

SIDE BLIND ZONE SYS. UNAVAILABLE: This message indicates that the SBZA system is disabled because the sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in the blind zone. The sensor may be blocked by mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush. This message may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray. The vehicle does not need service. For cleaning, see *Exterior Care on page 10-102*.

SERVICE BLIND ZONE ALERT SYSTEM: If this message appears, both SBZA displays will remain on indicating there is a problem with the SBZA system. If these displays remain on after continued driving, the system needs service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

FCC Information

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-22* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

This vehicle may have an RVC system. Read this entire section before using it.

The RVC system can assist the driver when backing up by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The RVC system does not display pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or any other object located outside the camera's field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle.

Do not back the vehicle using only the RVC screen or by using the screen during longer, higher speed backing maneuvers, or where there could be

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

cross-traffic. Perceived distances may be different from actual distances.

Failure to use proper care before backing may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Always check before backing by checking behind and around the vehicle.

An image appears on the navigation screen with the message Check Surroundings for Safety when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). The navigation screen goes to the previous screen after approximately 10 seconds once the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse).

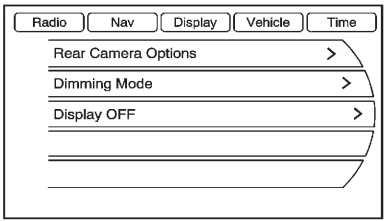
To cancel the delay, do one of the following:

- Press a hard key on the navigation system.
- Shift into P (Park).
- Reach a vehicle speed of 8 km/h (5 mph).

Turning the Rear Vision Camera System On or Off

To turn the RVC system on or off:

1. Shift into P (Park).
2. Press the CONFIG button to enter the configure menu options.
3. Select Display.



4. Select Rear Camera Options.
5. Select Camera. When a checkmark appears next to the Camera option, then the RVC system is on.

Symbols

The navigation system may have a feature that lets the driver view symbols on the navigation screen while using the RVC. The Ultrasonic Rear Park Assist (URPA) system must not be disabled to use the caution symbols. The error message Rear Parking Assist Symbols Unavailable may display if URPA has been disabled and the symbols have been turned on. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-44*.

The symbols appear and may cover an object when viewing the navigation screen when an object is detected by the URPA system.

To turn the symbols on or off:

1. Shift into P (Park).
2. Press the CONFIG button to enter the configure menu options.
3. Select Display.
4. Select Rear Camera Options.
5. Select Symbols. When a checkmark appears next to the Symbols option, symbols will appear.

Guidelines

The RVC system has a guideline overlay that can help the driver align the vehicle when backing into a parking spot.

To turn the guidelines on or off:

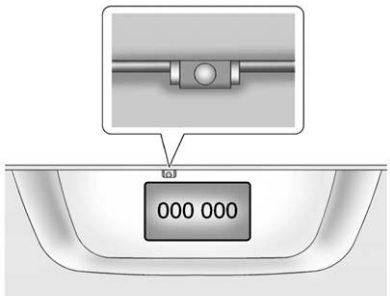
1. Shift into P (Park).
2. Press the CONFIG button to enter the configure menu options.
3. Select Display.
4. Select Rear Camera Options.
5. Select Guidelines. When a checkmark appears next to the Guidelines option, guidelines will appear.

Rear Vision Camera Error Messages

SERVICE REAR VISION CAMERA SYSTEM: This message can display when the system is not receiving information it requires from other vehicle systems.

If any other problem occurs or if a problem persists, see your dealer.

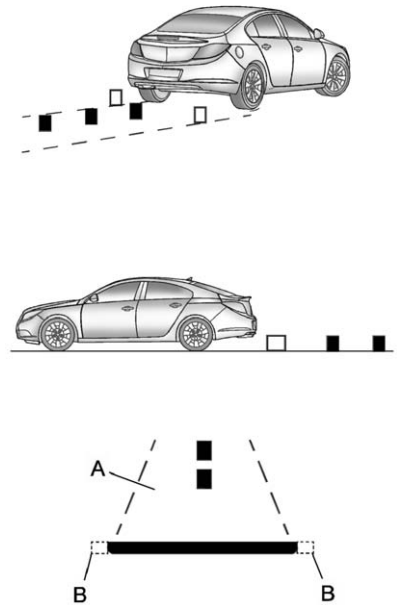
Rear Vision Camera Location



The camera is located above the license plate.

The area displayed by the camera is limited. It does not display objects that are close to either corner or under the bumper and can vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions. The distance of the image that appears on the screen is different from the actual distance.

The following illustration shows the field of view that the camera provides.



A. View displayed by the camera.

B. Corner of the rear bumper.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The RVC system may not work properly or display a clear image if:

- The RVC is turned off. See “Turning the Rear Camera System On or Off” earlier in this section.
- It is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlamps are shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else builds up on the camera lens. Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth.
- The back of the vehicle is in an accident. The position and mounting angle of the camera can change or the camera can be affected. Be sure to have the camera and its position and mounting angle checked at your dealer.

Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle. To help keep the engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, we recommend the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

Look for the TOP TIER label on the fuel pump to ensure gasoline meets enhanced detergency standards developed by auto companies. A list of marketers providing TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found at www.toptiergas.com.

TOP TIER™
Detergent Gasoline

CATEGORIE SUPERIÉURE™
Essences Détergentes

The eighth digit of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies the vehicle's engine. The VIN is at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 12-1*.

Recommended Fuel

Use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. If the octane rating is less than 87, an audible knocking noise, commonly referred to as spark knock, might be heard when driving. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, the engine needs service.

Gasoline Specifications (U.S. and Canada Only)

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 or 3.511 in Canada. Some gasolines contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). We recommend against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Fuel Additives on page 9-53* for additional information.

California Fuel Requirements

If the vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California Emissions Standards, the vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance might be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and the vehicle might fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-17*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Fuels in Foreign Countries

Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

Fuel Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing the emission control system to work properly. In most cases, nothing should have to be added to the fuel.

However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean and avoid problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Look for the TOP TIER label on the fuel pump to ensure gasoline meets enhanced detergency standards developed by the auto companies. A list of marketers providing TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found at www.toptiergas.com.

For customers who do not use TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline regularly, one bottle of GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS, added to the fuel tank at every engine oil change, can help clean deposits from fuel injectors and intake valves. GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS is the only gasoline additive recommended by General Motors. It is available at your dealer.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines might be available in your area. We recommend that you use these gasolines, if they comply with the specifications described earlier. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 15% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

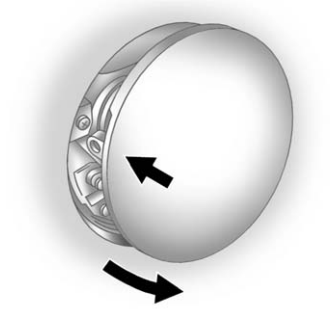
Notice: **This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer for service.

Filling the Tank

⚠ WARNING

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island. Turn off the engine when refueling. Do not smoke near fuel or when refueling the vehicle. Do not use cellular phones. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling the vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.



The tethered fuel cap is behind the fuel door on the vehicle's passenger side. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise to remove. While refueling, hang the tethered fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door. Reinstall the cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks.

⚠ WARNING

Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care on page 10-102*.

⚠ WARNING

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Notice: **If a new fuel cap is needed, be sure to get the right type of cap from your dealer. The wrong type of fuel cap might not fit properly, might cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light, and could damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-17*.**

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ WARNING

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned and the vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.
- Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.

Towing

General Towing Information

Only use towing equipment that has been designed for the vehicle. Contact your dealer or trailering dealer for assistance with preparing the vehicle for towing a trailer.

See the following trailer towing information in this section:

- For information on driving while towing a trailer, see “Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips.”
- For maximum vehicle and trailer weights, see “Trailer Towing.”
- For information on equipment to tow a trailer, see “Towing Equipment.”

For information on towing a disabled vehicle, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-99*. For information on towing the vehicle behind another vehicle such as a motor home, see *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-99*.

Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips

⚠ WARNING

The driver can lose control when pulling a trailer if the correct equipment is not used or the vehicle is not driven properly. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. The driver and passengers could be seriously injured. The vehicle may also be damaged; the resulting repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Pull a trailer only if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

The vehicle can tow a trailer when equipped with the proper trailer towing equipment. For trailering capacity, see *Trailer Towing (Except eAssist) on page 9-61* or *Trailer Towing (eAssist) on page 9-62*. Trailering changes handling, acceleration, braking, durability, and fuel economy. With the added weight, the engine, transmission, wheel assemblies, and tires are forced to work harder and under greater loads. The trailer also adds wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements. For safe trailering, correctly use the proper trailering equipment.

The following information has important trailering tips and rules for your safety and that of your passengers. Read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

Pulling a Trailer

Here are some important points:

- There are many laws, including speed limit restrictions that apply to trailering. Check for legal requirements.
- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 1 600 km (1,000 mi) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle, or other parts could be damaged.
- During the first 800 km (500 mi) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not make starts at full throttle. This reduces wear on the vehicle.
- The vehicle can tow in D (Drive). Use a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often.
- Obey speed limit restrictions. Do not drive faster than the maximum posted speed for trailers, or no more than 90 km/h (55 mph), to reduce wear on the vehicle.

Driving with a Trailer

Towing a trailer requires experience. Get familiar with handling and braking with the added trailer weight. The vehicle is now longer and not as responsive as the vehicle is by itself.

Check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires, and mirror adjustments. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working.

During the trip, check regularly to be sure that the load is secure, and the lamps and trailer brakes are working properly.

Towing with a Stability Control System

When towing, the sound of the stability control system might be heard. The system is reacting to the vehicle movement caused by the trailer, which mainly occurs during cornering. This is normal when towing heavier trailers.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. Because the rig is longer, it is necessary to go farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. To move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Notice: **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal so the trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Use the turn signal well in advance and avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers.

Turn Signals when Towing a Trailer

The turn signal indicators on the instrument panel flash whenever signaling a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps also flash, telling other drivers the vehicle is turning, changing lanes, or stopping.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on the instrument panel flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving on Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before starting down a long or steep downgrade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might have to be used so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

The vehicle can tow in D (Drive). Use a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, engine coolant boils at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, the vehicle could show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked, preferably on level ground, with the transmission in P (Park) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-19*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ WARNING

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the brake pedal until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park).
5. Release the brake pedal.

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal while you:
   1.1. Start the engine.
   1.2. Shift into a gear.
   1.3. Release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See the *Maintenance Schedule on page 11-3*. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system, and brake system. Inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Engine Cooling when Trailer Towing

The cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-19*.

Trailer Towing (Except eAssist)

Before pulling a trailer, there are three important considerations that have to do with weight:

- The weight of the trailer.
- The weight of the trailer tongue.
- The total weight on your vehicle's tires.

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

For a vehicle with a V6 engine, it should never weigh more than 454 kg (1,000 lbs). But even that can be too heavy.

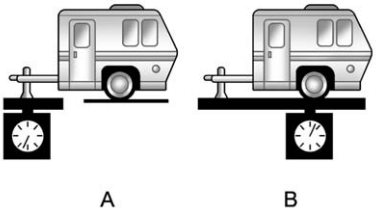
It depends on how the rig is used. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature, and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” later in this section for more information.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers, and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Ask your dealer for trailering information or advice, or write us at our Customer Assistance Offices. See *Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-5* or *Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) on page 13-5* for more information.

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross weight of the vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If there are a lot of options, equipment, passengers, or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. If towing a trailer, the tongue load must be added to the GVW because the vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12* for more information.



The trailer tongue (A) should weigh 10 to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B).

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure the vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. These numbers can be found on the Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*. Make sure not to go over the GVW limit for the vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

Trailer Towing (eAssist)

The vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer.

Towing Equipment

Hitches

Use the correct hitch equipment. See your dealer or a hitch dealer for assistance.

- The rear bumper on the vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will any holes be made in the body of the vehicle when the trailer hitch is installed? If there are, seal the holes when the hitch is removed. If the holes are not sealed, dirt, water, and deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from the exhaust can get into the vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust on page 9-30*.

Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Leave enough slack so the rig can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

Does the trailer have its own brakes? Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so they are installed, adjusted, and maintained properly.

Because the vehicle has antilock brakes, do not tap into the vehicle's brake system. If this is done, both brake systems will not work well, or at all.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Notice: **Do not add anything electrical to the vehicle unless you check with your dealer first. Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-33* and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-34*.

✍ NOTES

Vehicle Care

General Information

General Information 10-2
California Proposition 65 Warning 10-3
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 10-3
Accessories and Modifications 10-3

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work 10-4
Hood 10-5
Engine Compartment Overview 10-6
Engine Oil 10-9
Engine Oil Life System 10-12
Automatic Transmission Fluid 10-13
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 10-13
Cooling System 10-15
Engine Coolant 10-16
Engine Overheating 10-19
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 10-21
Power Steering Fluid (2.4L L4 Engine) 10-21
Power Steering Fluid (3.6L V6 Engine) 10-21
Washer Fluid 10-22
Brakes 10-23
Brake Fluid 10-24
Battery 10-25
Starter Switch Check 10-27
Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check 10-27
Ignition Transmission Lock Check 10-28
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 10-28
Wiper Blade Replacement 10-29

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp Aiming 10-30

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement 10-33
Halogen Bulbs 10-33
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 10-33
Headlamps, Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps 10-33
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps 10-35
License Plate Lamp 10-36
Replacement Bulbs 10-36

Electrical System

High Voltage Devices and Wiring 10-37
Electrical System Overload 10-37
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 10-38
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-38
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 10-42
Rear Compartment Fuse Block 10-44

Wheels and Tires

Tires 10-47
Winter Tires 10-48
Tire Sidewall Labeling 10-48
Tire Designations 10-51

Tire Terminology and Definitions 10-51
Tire Pressure 10-54
Tire Pressure Monitor System 10-56
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 10-57
Tire Inspection 10-60
Tire Rotation 10-61
When It Is Time for New Tires 10-62
Buying New Tires 10-63
Different Size Tires and Wheels 10-65
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 10-65
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 10-67
Wheel Replacement 10-67
Tire Chains 10-68
If a Tire Goes Flat 10-69
Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Relief Button) 10-71
Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Deflation Button) 10-78
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-87
Tire Changing 10-87
Compact Spare Tire 10-93

Jump Starting
Jump Starting (On-board with eAssist Only) 10-94
Jump Starting (with or without eAssist) 10-95

Towing
Towing the Vehicle 10-99
Recreational Vehicle Towing 10-99

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 10-102
Interior Care 10-105
Floor Mats 10-107

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

ACDelco®

Genuine GM | Parts

GM Accessories

California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems, many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in Remote Keyless Entry transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer to accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories installed by a dealer technician.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-34*.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

eAssist Vehicles Only

⚠ WARNING

Never try to do your own service on eAssist components. You can be injured and the vehicle can be damaged if you try to do your own service work. Service and repair of these eAssist components should only be performed by a trained service technician with the proper knowledge and tools.

All Vehicles

⚠ WARNING

You can be injured and the vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before attempting any vehicle maintenance task.
- Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. Metric and English fasteners can be easily confused. If the wrong fasteners are used, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.

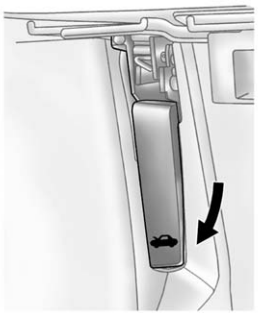
If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 13-18*.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Airbag System Check on page 3-35*.

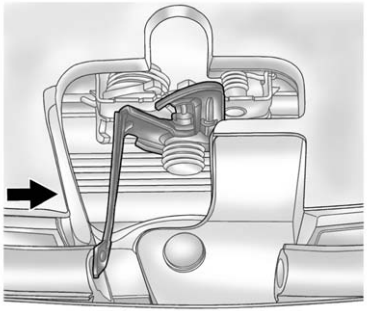
Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed. See *Maintenance Records on page 11-15*.

Hood

To open the hood:



1. Pull the interior hood release handle located to the left of the steering column below the instrument panel.

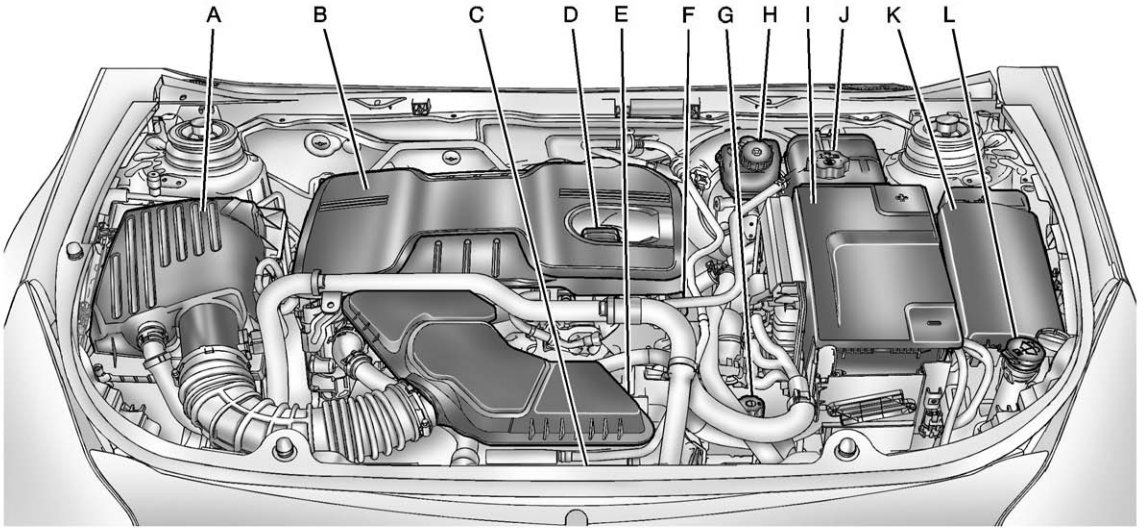


2. Go to the front of the vehicle and push the secondary hood release handle toward the driver side of the vehicle.
3. Lift the hood.

To close the hood:

1. Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly.
2. Lower the hood 30 cm (12 in) above the vehicle and release it so it fully latches. Check to make sure the hood is closed and repeat the process if necessary.

Engine Compartment Overview



2.4L L4 Engine

A. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-13*.

B. Engine Cover.

C. Engine Cooling Fans (Out of View). See *Cooling System on page 10-15*.

D. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

E. Engine Oil Dipstick (Out of View). See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

F. High Voltage Cable (Orange Color).

G. Transmission Fluid Cap. See *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 10-13*.

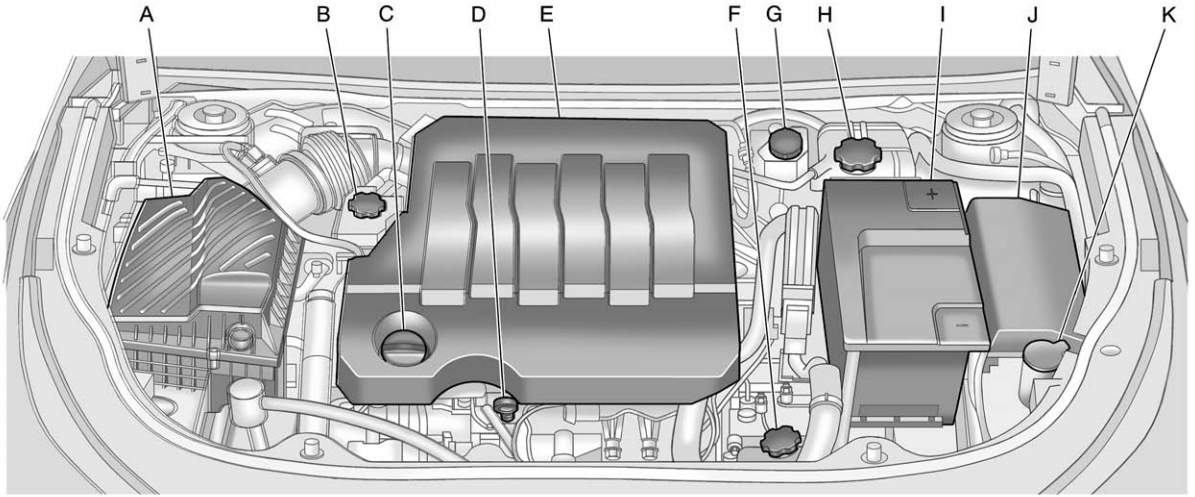
H. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See *Brakes on page 10-23*.

I. Battery (Under Cover). See *Battery on page 10-25*.

J. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-16*.

K. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-38*.

L. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-22*.



3.6L V6 Engine

A. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-13*.

B. Power Steering Reservoir and Cap. See *Power Steering Fluid (2.4L L4 Engine) on page 10-21* or *Power Steering Fluid (3.6L V6 Engine) on page 10-21*.

C. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

D. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

E. Engine Cover.

F. Transmission Fluid Cap and Dipstick. See *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 10-13*.

G. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See *Brakes on page 10-23*.

H. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-16*.

I. Battery Cover. See *Battery on page 10-25*.

J. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-38*.

K. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-22*.

Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Always use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

Obtaining an accurate oil level reading is essential:

1. If the engine has been running recently, turn off the engine and allow several minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan. Checking the oil level too soon after engine shutoff will not provide an accurate oil level reading.
2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

When to Add Engine Oil

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

Notice: **Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.**

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-12*.

Specification

Use and ask for licensed engine oils with the dexos1™ approved certification mark. Engine oils meeting the requirements for the vehicle should have the dexos1 approved certification mark. This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos1 specification.

Notice: **Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Check with your dealer or service provider on whether the oil is approved to the dexos1 specification.**

Viscosity Grade

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. Do not use other viscosity grade oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.

If in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below −20°F (−29°C), an SAE 0W-30 oil should be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, always select an oil that meets the dexos1 specification or equivalent. See “Specification” for more information.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the dexos specification and displaying the dexos certification mark are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and miles driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-38*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi).

It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km (3,000 mi) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. To reset the system:

1. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
2. Press the DIC MENU button on the turn signal lever to enter the Vehicle Information Menu. Use the thumbwheel to scroll through the menu items until you reach REMAINING OIL LIFE.
3. Press the SET/CLR button to reset the oil life at 100%.
4. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

The system is reset when the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is off and the REMAINING OIL LIFE 100% message is displayed.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer service department and have it repaired as soon as possible.

There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, you should have this done at your dealer service department. Contact your dealer for additional information or the procedure can be found in the service manual. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 13-18*.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Maintenance Schedule on page 11-3*, and be sure to use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-12*.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The engine air cleaner/filter is located in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information on location.

When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

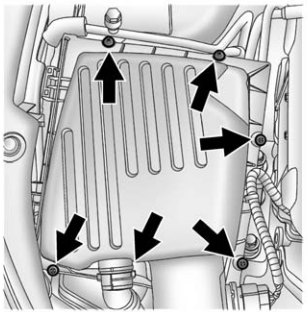
Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 80 000 km (50,000 mi) interval. See *Maintenance Schedule on page 11-3* for more information. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

To inspect the air cleaner/filter, remove the filter from the vehicle and lightly shake the filter to release loose dust and dirt. If the filter remains covered with dirt, a new filter is required.

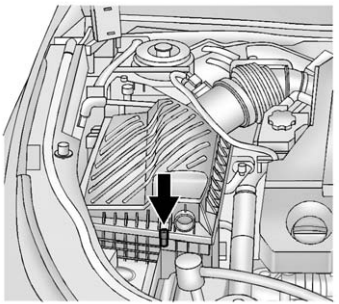
To inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter:

2.4L L4 Engine



1. Remove the six screws on top of the engine air cleaner/filter housing.
2. Lift the filter cover housing away from the engine air cleaner/filter housing.
3. Pull out the filter.
4. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
5. Lower the filter cover housing toward the engine.
6. Install the six screws on the top of the housing to lock the cover in place.

3.6L V6 Engine



1. Remove the screws on top of the engine air cleaner/filter housing.
2. Lift the filter cover housing away from the engine.
3. Pull out the filter.
4. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
5. Lower the filter cover housing toward the engine.
6. Install the screws on the top of the housing to lock the cover in place.

⚠ WARNING

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. Use caution when working on the engine and do not drive with the air cleaner/filter off.

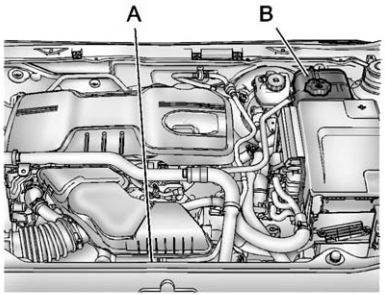
Notice: **If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.**

Cooling System

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.

When it is safe to lift the hood:

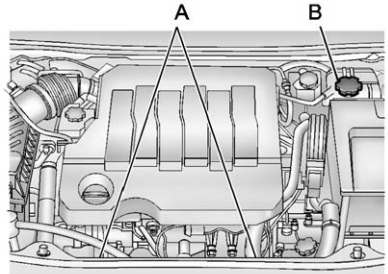
2.4L L4 Engine



A. Engine Cooling Fans (Out of View)

B. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap

3.6L V6 Engine



A. Engine Cooling Fans (Out of View)

B. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap

⚠ WARNING

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ WARNING

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner. Any repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.**

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant mixture. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-12* and *Maintenance Schedule on page 11-3* for more information.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-19*.

What to Use

⚠ WARNING

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant for non-eAssist engine(s). Use a 50/50 mixture of deionized water and DEX-COOL coolant for eAssist engine(s).

Use a 50/50 mixture of deionized water or clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added.

This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to −37°C (−34°F), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 129°C (265°F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminum parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

Notice: **If an improper coolant mixture is used, the engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Too much deionized water or clean, drinkable water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.**

Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorized service center, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down.

If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the mark pointed to, add a 50/50 mixture of deionized water or clean drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.

If no coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank, add coolant as follows:

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

⚠ WARNING

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

Notice: **This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.**

⚠ WARNING

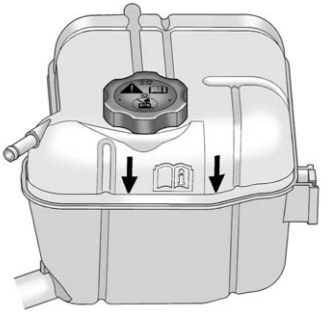
An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ WARNING

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

The coolant surge tank pressure cap can be removed when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

1. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise. If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.
2. Keep turning the cap and remove it.



3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture to the mark pointed to on the front of the coolant surge tank.

4. With the coolant surge tank cap off, start the engine and let it run until the upper radiator hose starts getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fans. By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the mark pointed to on the front of the coolant surge tank.
5. Replace the cap. Be sure the cap is hand–tight and fully seated.

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

Engine Overheating

2.4L L4 Engine

There is a engine coolant temperature warning light on the instrument panel cluster that indicates an overheated engine condition. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 5-24* for more information.

3.6L V6 Engine

There is a coolant temperature gauge and a engine coolant temperature warning light on the instrument panel cluster that indicate an overheated engine condition. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge on page 5-14* and *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 5-24* for more information.

If the decision is made not to lift the hood when this warning appears, get service help right away. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.

If the decision is made to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, the fans should be running. If not, do not continue to run the engine and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Engine damage from running the engine without coolant is not covered by the warranty.**

If Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 10-21* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

If No Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem might not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer.

If the overheat warning displays with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. In heavy traffic, let the engine idle in N (Neutral) while stopped. If it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral), and let the engine idle.

2.4L L4 Engine

If the engine coolant temperature warning light no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the vehicle in front. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally.

3.6L V6 Engine

If the temperature overheat gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an engine coolant temperature warning light no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the vehicle in front. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down. Also, see *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 10-21*.

Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

This emergency operating mode allows the vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency situation. If an overheated engine condition exists, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, there is significant loss in power and engine performance.

2.4L L4 Engine

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on the instrument panel, to indicate the vehicle has entered overheated engine protection operating mode. Driving extended distances and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

3.6L V6 Engine

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on the instrument panel, to indicate the vehicle has entered overheated engine protection operating mode. The temperature gauge also indicates an overheat condition exists. Driving extended distances and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

Power Steering Fluid (2.4L L4 Engine)

The vehicle has electric power steering and does not use power steering fluid.

Power Steering Fluid (3.6L V6 Engine)

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for information on the location of the power steering fluid reservoir.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless a leak is suspected in the system or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

Check the level after the vehicle has been driven for at least 20 minutes so the fluid is warm.

To check the power steering fluid:

1. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and pull it straight up.
4. Wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
5. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
6. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

When the engine is hot, the level should be at the hot MAX level. When the engine is cold, the fluid level should be between MIN and MAX on the dipstick.

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-12*. Always use the proper fluid.

Washer Fluid

What to Use

When windshield washer fluid is needed, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If operating the vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid

Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for reservoir location.

Notice

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windshield washer. It can damage the windshield washer system and paint.**

Brakes

This vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ WARNING

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced, be sure to get new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, installing disc brake pads that are wrong for the vehicle, can change the balance between the front and rear brakes — for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

Brake Fluid

The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ WARNING

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-20*.

What to Add

Use only new DOT 3 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-12*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

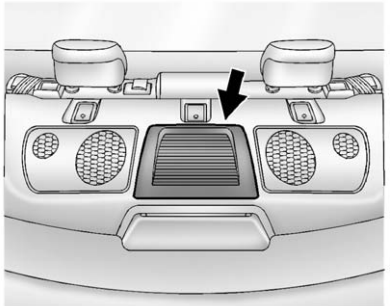
Notice

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately.**

Battery

This vehicle has a standard 12-volt battery. Refer to the replacement number on the original battery label when a new standard 12-volt battery is needed.

eAssist vehicles also have a high voltage battery. Only a trained service technician with the proper knowledge and tools should inspect, test, or replace the high voltage battery. See your dealer if the high voltage battery needs service. The dealer has information on how to recycle the high voltage battery. There is also information available at http://www.recyclemybattery.com.



The eAssist system high voltage battery is cooled with air drawn from the vehicle interior. The cold air intake for the battery is located behind the rear seat, on the filler panel. Do not cover the intake.

⚠ WARNING

Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

⚠ WARNING

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting (On-board with eAssist Only) on page 10-94* or *Jump Starting (with or without eAssist) on page 10-95* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: Remove the 12-volt battery black, negative (−) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the 12-volt battery black, negative (−) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

Remember to reconnect the battery when ready to drive the vehicle.

Starter Switch Check

⚠ WARNING

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-36*.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer for service.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check

⚠ WARNING

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-36*.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition on, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer for service.

Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF in each shift lever position.

- The ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when the shift lever is in P (Park).
- With the key access ignition system, the ignition key should come out only in LOCK/OFF. See *Ignition Positions (Key Access) on page 9-18* or *Ignition Positions (Keyless Access) on page 9-20*.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ WARNING

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

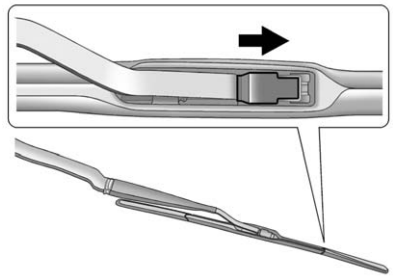
Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear and cracking. See *Maintenance Schedule on page 11-3* for more information.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 11-14*.

To replace the windshield wiper blade:

1. Pull the windshield wiper assembly away from the windshield.



2. Lift up on the latch in the middle of the wiper blade where the wiper arm attaches.
3. With the latch open, pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield far enough to release it from the J-hooked end of the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.

   Allowing the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windshield. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not allow the wiper blade to touch the windshield.
5. Reverse Steps 1 through 3 for wiper blade replacement.

Headlamp Aiming

The headlamp aiming system has been preset at the factory.

If the vehicle is damaged in an accident, the aim of the headlamps may be affected and adjustment may be necessary.

It is recommended that a dealer adjust the headlamps. To re-aim the headlamps yourself, use the following procedure.

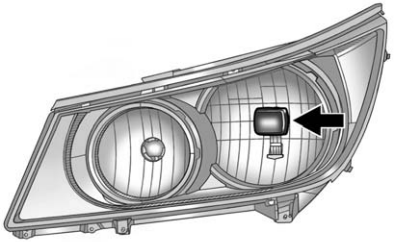
The vehicle should be properly prepared as follows:

- The vehicle should be placed so the headlamps are 7.6 m (25 ft) from a light-colored wall.
- The vehicle must have all four tires on a level surface which is level all the way to the wall.
- The vehicle should be placed so it is perpendicular to the wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle should not have any snow, ice, or mud on it.
- The vehicle should be fully assembled and all other work stopped while headlamp aiming is being performed.
- The vehicle should be normally loaded with a full tank of fuel and one person or 75 kg (160 lbs) sitting in the driver seat.
- Tires should be properly inflated.

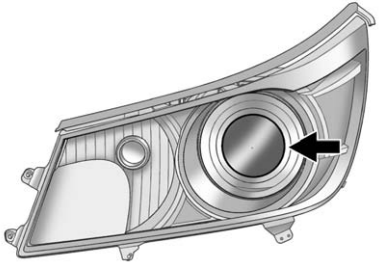
Headlamp aiming is done with the vehicle's low-beam headlamps. The high-beam headlamps will be correctly aimed if the low-beam headlamps are aimed properly.

To adjust the vertical aim:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood on page 10-5*.

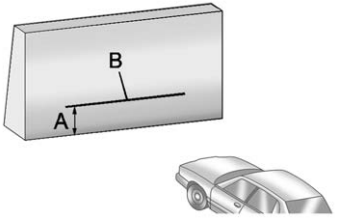


Base



Uplevel

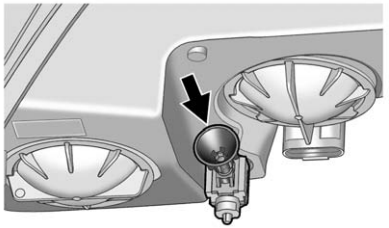
2. Locate the aim dot on the lens of the low-beam headlamp.
3. Measure the distance from the ground to the aim dot on the low-beam headlamp. Record the distance.



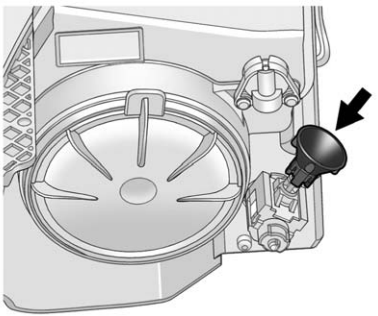
4. At the wall, measure from the ground upward (A) to the recorded distance from Step 3 and mark it.
5. Draw or tape a horizontal line (B) on the wall the width of the vehicle at the height of the mark in Step 4.

Notice: **Do not cover a headlamp to improve beam cut-off when aiming. Covering a headlamp may cause excessive heat build-up which may cause damage to the headlamp.**

6. Turn on the low-beam headlamps and place a piece of cardboard or equivalent in front of the headlamp not being adjusted. This allows only the beam of light from the headlamp being adjusted to be seen on the flat surface.

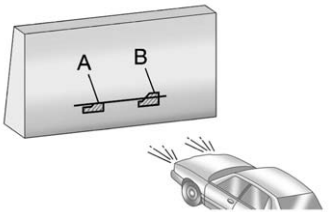


Base



Uplevel

7. Locate the vertical headlamp aiming screws, which are under the hood near each headlamp assembly.
8. Turn the vertical aiming screw until the headlamp beam is aimed to the horizontal tape line. Turn it clockwise or counterclockwise to raise or lower the angle of the beam.



9. Make sure that the light from the headlamp is positioned at the bottom edge of the horizontal tape line. The lamp on the left (A) shows the correct headlamp aim. The lamp on the right (B) shows the incorrect headlamp aim.
10. Repeat Steps 7 through 9 for the opposite headlamp.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 10-36*.

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ WARNING

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

⚠ WARNING

The low beam high intensity discharge lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer or a qualified technician service them.

After an HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, the beam might be a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

Headlamps, Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps

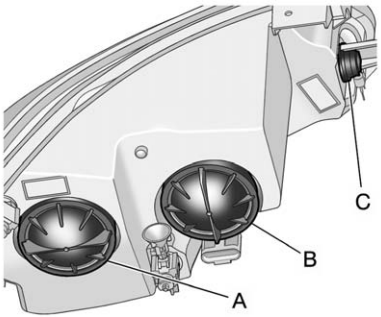
Base Headlamp Assembly

The base model vehicle has a halogen high-beam headlamp, a low-beam/Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) headlamp, and a turn signal/parking lamp on the headlamp assembly.

For replacement of the turn signal/parking lamp bulb on an eAssist vehicle, contact your dealer.

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood on page 10-5*.



   A. Low-Beam Headlamp/DRL
   B. High-Beam Headlamp
   C. Parking/Turn Signal Lamp

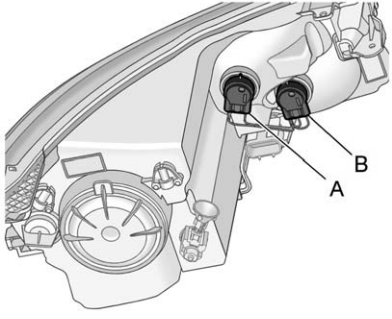
2. If replacing a headlamp bulb, remove the dust cover from the back of the headlamp housing by turning counterclockwise one-quarter turn.
3. If replacing a turn signal/parking lamp bulb on a non-eAssist vehicle, remove the close out panel push pins and close out panel covering the bulb socket.
4. Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp by turning counterclockwise one-quarter turn.
5. Remove the bulb from the socket. If replacing the high/low-beam bulb, pry the two clips on either end of the bulb and pull straight out.
6. Install the new bulb in the socket.
7. Install the bulb socket by turning clockwise one-quarter turn.
8. If a headlamp bulb was replaced, install the dust cover in the back of the headlamp housing by turning clockwise one-quarter turn.

Uplevel Headlamp Assembly

The uplevel model vehicle has a high intensity discharge (HID) high/low beam, a dedicated DRL, and a parking/turn signal lamp on the headlamp assembly. See *High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting on page 10-33* for more information.

To replace one of these bulbs:

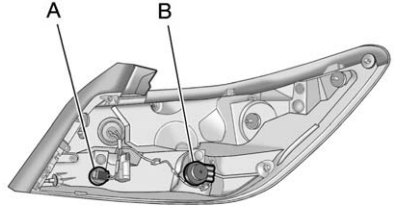
1. Open the hood. See *Hood on page 10-5*.



   A. DRL Lamp
   B. Parking/Turn Signal Lamp

2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly.
3. Pull the bulb straight out from the socket.
4. Push the new bulb into the socket and reinstall the socket into the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.

Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps



A. Back-Up Lamp
B. Turn Signal Lamp

To replace one of these lamps:

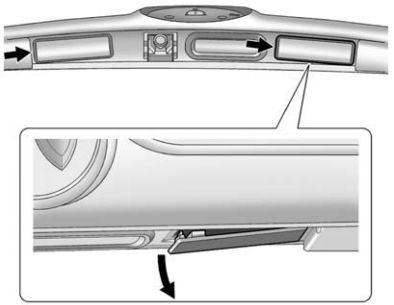
1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk on page 2-13*.
2. Remove the fasteners and pull back the trunk trim.
3. Remove the four plastic wing nuts holding the taillamp assembly in place.
4. Pull out the taillamp assembly and disconnect the wiring harness.
5. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it.
6. Pull the old bulb straight out of the bulb socket.
7. Reverse Steps 1 through 6 to install.

License Plate Lamp

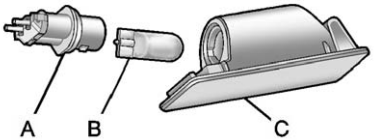
The license plate lamps for this vehicle are on the trunk lid.

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk on page 2-13* for more information.



2. Push the end on either of the lamp assemblies (passenger side shown) and then move the lamp assembly down to remove it from the trunk lid.



A. Bulb Socket

B. Bulb

C. Lamp Assembly

3. Turn the bulb socket (A) counterclockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly (C).
4. Pull the bulb (B) straight out of the bulb socket.
5. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly.
6. Move the lamp assembly into the trunk lid, engaging the clip side first.
7. Push on the lamp side opposite the clip until the lamp assembly snaps into place.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Back-Up Lamp	921LL
Daytime Running Lamp (Uplevel)	3157K LCP
Front Turn Signal/ Parking Lamp	3757NAK LCP
Headlamp High Beam (Base)	H9
Headlamp Low Beam (Base)	H11LL
License Plate Lamp	W5WLL
Rear Turn Signal	3757NAK LCP

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

Electrical System

High Voltage Devices and Wiring

⚠ WARNING

Exposure to high voltage can cause shock, burns, and even death. The high voltage components in the vehicle can only be serviced by technicians with special training.

High voltage components are identified by labels. Do not remove, open, take apart, or modify these components. High voltage cable or wiring has orange covering. Do not probe, tamper with, cut, or modify high voltage cable or wiring.

Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect power devices in the vehicle.

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

Windshield Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windshield wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windshield before using the windshield wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

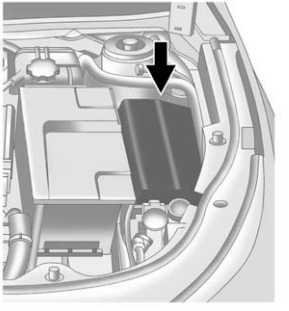
The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

To check a fuse, look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

Fuses of the same amperage can be temporarily borrowed from another fuse location, if a fuse goes out. Replace the fuse as soon as possible.

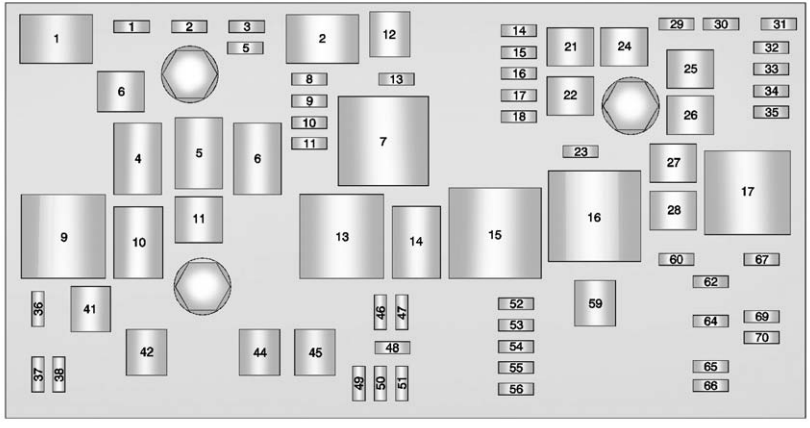
To identify and check fuses, circuit breakers, and relays, see *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-38*, *Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 10-42*, and *Rear Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-44*.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block



To remove the fuse block cover, squeeze the three retaining clips on the cover and lift it straight up.

Notice: **Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.**



Engine Compartment Fuse Block

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

J-Case Fuses	Usage
6	Wiper
12	Starter

J-Case Fuses	Usage
21	Rear Power Windows
22	Sunroof
24	Front Power Windows

J-Case Fuses	Usage
25	Passive Entry/ Passive Start Module — Battery 2 (eAssist)
26	Antilock Brake System Pump
27	Electric Park Brake
28	Rear Window Defogger
41	Brake Vacuum Pump
42	Cooling Fan K2
43	Not Used
44	Transmission Auxiliary Oil Pump (eAssist)
45	Cooling Fan K1
59	AIR Pump

Mini Fuses	Usage
1	Transmission Control Module — Battery
2	Engine Control Module Battery
3	Air Conditioning Compressor Clutch
5	Engine Control Module Run/Crank
8	Ignition Coils — Even (Six Cylinder Engine), Ignition Coils — All (Four Cylinder Engine
9	Ignition Coils — Odd (Six Cylinder Engine)
10	Engine Control Module — Switched Battery (from Engine Control Module Relay)

Mini Fuses	Usage
11	Six Cylinder Engine: Post Catalytic Converter Oxygen Sensor Heater, Mass Air Flow Sensor, Flex Fuel Sensor
13	Run/Crank for Transmission Control Module and Fuel System Control Module
14	Cabin Heater Coolant Pump (eAssist)
15	Motor Generator Unit Coolant Pump (eAssist)
16	Run/Crank for eAssist Power Inverter Module
17	Airbag Module — Run/ Crank

Mini Fuses	Usage
18	Vented Seats (eAssist)
23	Variable Effort Steering (if equipped) or eAssist Power Inverter Module
29	Power Lumbar, Left
30	Power Lumbar, Right or Power Pack Cooling Fan (eAssist)
31	Passive Entry/ Passive Start Module — Battery 1 (eAssist)
32	Body Control Module 6
33	Heated Seat — Front
34	Antilock Brake System Valves
35	Amplifier

Mini Fuses	Usage
36	Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Motors — Battery
37	Right High Beam
38	Left High Beam
46	Cooling Fan Relay
47	Six Cylinder Engine: Pre Catalytic Converter Oxygen Sensor Heater, Canister Purge Solenoid. Four Cylinder Engine: Pre and Post Catalytic Converter Oxygen Sensor Heaters, Canister Purge Solenoid, Mass Air Flow Sensor.
48	Fog Lamps
49	Right High Intensity Discharge Headlamp

Mini Fuses	Usage
50	Left High Intensity Discharge Headlamp
51	Horn
52	Cluster Run/Crank
53	Run/Crank for Inside Rearview Mirror, Rear Vision Camera
54	Run/Crank for: Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning
55	Outside Rearview Mirror, Universal Garage Door Opener, Front Window Switches
56	Windshield Washer
60	Heated Mirror
62	Canister Vent
64	Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Module — Battery

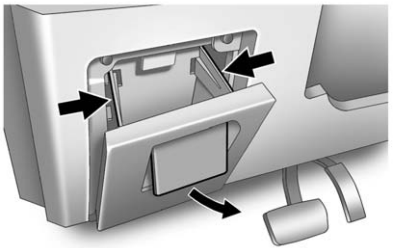
Mini Fuses	Usage
65	Not Used
66	AIR Solenoid (eAssist)
67	Fuel System Control Module
69	Regulated Voltage Control Sensor
70	Ultrasonic Parking Assist/Side Blind Zone

Mini Relays	Usage
7	Engine Control Module
9	Cooling Fan
13	Cooling Fan
15	Run/Crank
16	AIR Pump
17	Rear Window Defogger

Micro Relays	Usage
1	Air Conditioning Compressor Clutch
2	Starter
4	Wiper Speed
5	Wiper Control
6	Cabin Heater Coolant Pump (eAssist)
10	Cooling Fan
14	Headlamp Low Beam

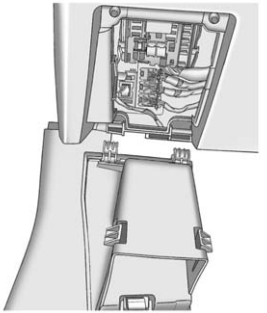
Ultra Micro Relays	Usage
11	Transmission Auxiliary Oil Pump (eAssist)

Instrument Panel Fuse Block

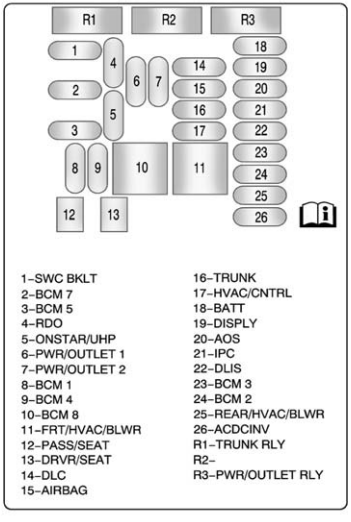


The instrument panel fuse block is located in the instrument panel, on the driver side of the vehicle. To access the fuses, open the fuse panel door by pulling down at the top.

Press in on the sides of the door to release it from the instrument panel.



Pull the door toward you to release it from the hinge.



Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
1	Steering Wheel Controls Backlight
2	Body Control Module 7
3	Body Control Module 5
4	Radio
5	OnStar
6	Power Outlet 1
7	Power Outlet 2
8	Body Control Module 1
9	Body Control Module 4
10	Body Control Module 8 (J-Case Fuse)

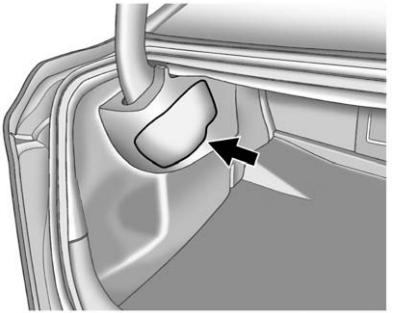
Fuses	Usage
11	Front Heater Ventilation Air Conditioning/Blower (J-Case Fuse)
12	Passenger Seat (Circuit Breaker)
13	Driver Seat (Circuit Breaker)
14	Diagnostic Link Connector
15	Airbag
16	Trunk
17	Heater Ventilation Air Conditioning Controller
18	Pre-Fuse for Fuses 4 and 5

Fuses	Usage
19	Infotainment and Center Stack Displays, Head-Up Display, Preferred Device Interface Module, Rear Seat Infotainment (eAssist)
20	Automatic Occupant Sensing
21	Instrument Panel Cluster
22	Discrete Logic Ignition Switch

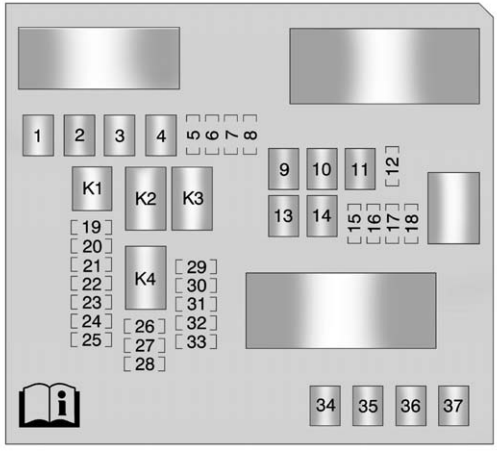
Fuses	Usage
23	Body Control Module 3
24	Body Control Module 2
25	Rear Heater Ventilation Air Conditioning/Blower
26	AC/DC Inverter

Relays	Usage
R1	Trunk Relay
R2	Not Used
R3	Power Outlet Relay

Rear Compartment Fuse Block



The rear compartment fuse block is located on the left side of the trunk behind a cover. Vehicles with eAssist do not have a rear compartment fuse block.



The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Mini Fuses	Usage
5	Not Used
6	Heated Steering Wheel — Run/Crank (without eAssist)
7	Not Used
8	Not Used
12	Not Used
15	Not Used
16	Not Used
17	Not Used
18	Passive Entry/ Passive Start Module — Battery 1 (without eAssist)
19	Not Used
20	Run/Crank for Rear Sunshade (without eAssist), Ventilated Seats (without eAssist)
21	Not Used
22	Not Used
23	Not Used
24	Not Used
25	Not Used
26	Not Used
27	Not Used
28	Not Used
29	Not Used

Mini Fuses	Usage
30	Not Used
31	Electronic Suspension Control (without eAssist)
32	Rear Seat Infotainment (without eAssist)
33	All-Wheel Drive (without eAssist)

J-Case Fuses	Usage
1	Not Used
2	Not Used
3	Not Used
4	Not Used

J-Case Fuses	Usage
9	Not Used
10	Not Used
11	Not Used
13	Not Used
14	Not Used
34	Not Used
35	Passive Entry/ Passive Start Module — Battery 2 (without eAssist)
36	Not Used
37	Not Used

Relays	Usage
K1	Not Used
K2	Run/Crank Relay for Seat Ventilation (without eAssist), Sunshade (without eAssist)
K3	Run Relay for Heated Steering Wheel (without eAssist)
K4	Not Used

Wheels and Tires

Tires

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. See the warranty manual for information regarding the tire warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.
- Overloading the tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout and a serious crash. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when the tires are cold.
- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn or old tires can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.
- Replace any tires that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Improperly repaired tires can cause a crash. Only the dealer or an authorized tire service center should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tires.
- Do not spin the tires in excess of 55 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tires to explode.

Winter Tires

Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on snow or ice covered roads is expected. All season tires provide good overall performance on most surfaces, but they may not offer the traction or the same level of performance as winter tires on snow or ice covered roads.

Winter tires, in general, are designed for increased traction on snow and ice covered roads. With winter tires, there may be decreased dry road traction, increased road noise, and shorter tread life. After changing to winter tires, be alert for changes in vehicle handling and braking.

See your dealer for details regarding winter tire availability and proper tire selection. Also, see *Buying New Tires on page 10-63*.

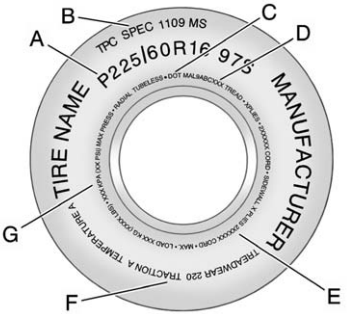
If using snow tires:

- Use tires of the same brand and tread type on all four wheel positions.
- Use only radial ply tires of the same size, load range, and speed rating as the original equipment tires.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y, and ZR speed rated tires. If winter tires with a lower speed rating are chosen, never exceed the tire's maximum speed capability.

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples show a typical passenger vehicle tire and a compact spare tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire Example

(A) Tire Size: The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the “Tire Size” illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

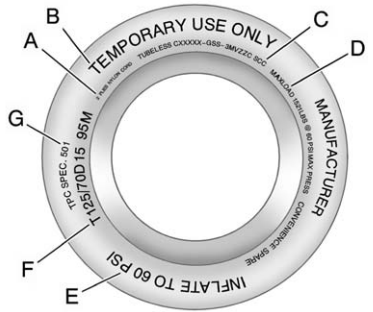
(C) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following the DOT (Department of Transportation) code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(E) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 10-65*.

(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.



Compact Spare Tire Example

(A) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(B) Temporary Use Only: The compact spare tire or temporary use tire has a tread life of approximately 5 000 km (3,000 mi) and should not be driven at speeds over 105 km/h (65 mph). The compact spare tire is for emergency use when a regular road tire has lost air and gone flat. If the vehicle has a compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 10-93* and *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-69*.

(C) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following the DOT (Department of Transportation) code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(D) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

(E) Tire Inflation: The temporary use tire or compact spare tire should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi). For more information on tire pressure and inflation see *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.

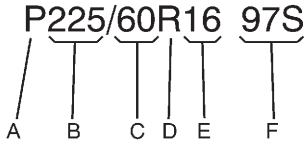
(F) Tire Size: A combination of letters and numbers define a tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. The letter T as the first character in the tire size means the tire is for temporary use only.

(G) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

Tire Designations

Tire Size

The following is an example of a typical passenger vehicle tire size.



(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 60, as shown in item C of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 60 percent as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Service Description: These characters represent the load index and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carrying capacity a tire is certified to carry. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch).

Accessory Weight: The combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.

Curb Weight: The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs). See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54* and*Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 10-62*.

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards): A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 10-65*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs) plus the rated cargo load. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See “Tire and Loading Information Label” under *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Notice: **Neither tire underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tires, or tires that do not have enough air, can result in:**

- **Tire overloading and overheating which could lead to a blowout.**
- **Premature or irregular wear.**
- **Poor handling.**
- **Reduced fuel economy.**

Overinflated tires, or tires that have too much air, can result in:

- **Unusual wear.**
- **Poor handling.**

- **Rough ride.**
- **Needless damage from road hazards.**

The Tire and Loading Information label on the vehicle indicates the original equipment tires and the correct cold tire inflation pressures. The recommended pressure is the minimum air pressure needed to support the vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight the vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*. How the vehicle is loaded affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load the vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check the tires once a month or more. Do not forget the compact spare tire, if the vehicle has one. The cold compact spare should be at 420 kPa (60 psi). For additional information regarding the compact spare tire, see*Compact Spare Tire on page 10-93*.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tire pressure. Proper tire inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tire. Check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold, meaning the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 1.6 km (1 mi).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure is high, press on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve to release air.

Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gauge.

Return the valve caps on the valve stems to prevent leaks and keep out dirt and moisture.

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-57* for additional information.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada Standards

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-22* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the tires and transmits the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the tire loading information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tire displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC). The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tire pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-27*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of the original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for the tires when they are cold. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.

The TPMS can warn about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-60*, *Tire Rotation on page 10-61* and *Tires on page 10-47*.

Notice: **Tire sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM-approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.**

Factory-installed Tire Inflator Kits use a GM approved liquid tire sealant. Using non-approved tire sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. See *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Relief Button) on page 10-71* or *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Deflation Button) on page 10-78* for information regarding the inflator kit materials and instructions.

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tire is replaced and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See “TPMS Sensor Matching Process” later in this section.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tires. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor matching process. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.

- Replacement tires or wheels do not match the original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires on page 10-63*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tire/wheel position after rotating the vehicle's tires or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor matching process should also be performed after replacing a spare tire with a road tire containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service or to purchase a relearn tool.

There are two minutes to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The TPMS sensor matching process is:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
3. Use the MENU button to select the Vehicle Information Menu in the Driver Information Center (DIC).
4. Use the thumbwheel to scroll to the Tire Pressure Menu Item screen.
5. Press the SET/CLR button to begin the sensor matching process.

   A message asking if the process should begin should appear.

6. Press the SET/CLR button again to confirm the selection.

   The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and the TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.

7. Start with the driver side front tire.
8. Place the relearn tool against the tire sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the TPMS sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position.
9. Proceed to the passenger side front tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 8.
10. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 8.
11. Proceed to the driver side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 8. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tire, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message on the DIC display screen goes off.
12. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
13. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.

Tire Inspection

We recommend that the tires, including the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tire if:

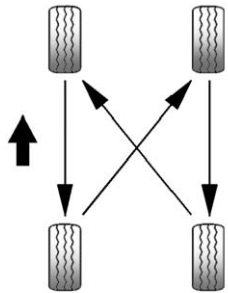
- The indicators at three or more places around the tire can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

Tire Rotation

Tires should be rotated every 12 000 km (7,500 mi). See *Maintenance Schedule on page 11-3*.

Tires are rotated to achieve a uniform wear for all tires. The first rotation is the most important.

Any time unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tires as soon as possible and check the wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 10-62* and *Wheel Replacement on page 10-67*.



Use this rotation pattern when rotating the tires.

Do not include the compact spare tire in the tire rotation.

Adjust the front and rear tires to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label after the tires have been rotated. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-57*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

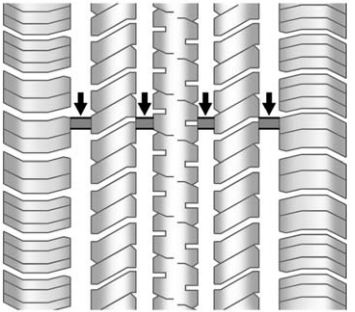
⚠ WARNING

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the center of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tire rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

When It Is Time for New Tires

Factors such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tires.



Treadwear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tires. Treadwear indicators appear when the tires have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-60* and *Tire Rotation on page 10-61* for more information.

The rubber in tires ages over time. This also applies for the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple conditions including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast aging takes place. Tires will typically need to be replaced due to wear before they may need to be replaced due to age. Consult the tire manufacturer for more information on when tires should be replaced.

Vehicle Storage

Tires age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to slow aging. This area should be free of grease, gasoline, or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tires that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a month, remove the tires or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tires.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for the vehicle. The original equipment tires installed were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. When replacement tires are needed, GM strongly recommends buying tires with the same TPC Spec rating.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of the vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 10-48* for additional information.

GM recommends replacing all the tires at the same time. Uniform tread depth on all tires will help to maintain the performance of the vehicle. Braking and handling performance may be adversely affected if all the tires are not replaced at the same time. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-60* and *Tire Rotation on page 10-61* for information on proper tire rotation.

⚠ WARNING

Tires could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tire could cause injury or death. Only your dealer or authorized tire service center should mount or dismount the tires.

⚠ WARNING

Mixing tires of different sizes, brands, or types may cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels.

⚠ WARNING

Using bias-ply tires on the vehicle may cause the wheel rim flanges to develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly and cause a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

If the vehicle tires must be replaced with a tire that does not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction (radial) as the original tires.

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tires are installed. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 10-56*.

The Tire and Loading Information label indicates the original equipment tires on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12* for the label location and more information about the Tire and Loading Information label.

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If wheels or tires are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tires, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, and electronic stability control, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

⚠ WARNING

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires on page 10-63* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-3* for additional information.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary

use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

All Passenger Car Tires Must Conform to Federal Safety Requirements In Addition To These Grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law. Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, check the alignment if there is unusual tire wear or if the vehicle is pulling to one side or the other. If the vehicle vibrates when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels might need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced.
If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminum wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors with new GM original equipment parts.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Tires can lose air, and cause loss of control, causing a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Notice: **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-69* for more information.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ WARNING

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Tire Chains

⚠ WARNING

Do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause loss of control and a crash.

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for the vehicle's tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To avoid vehicle damage, drive slow and readjust or remove the traction device if it contacts the vehicle. Do not spin the wheels. If traction devices are used, install them on the front tires.

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blow out while driving, especially if the tires are maintained properly. See *Tires on page 10-47*. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there is ever a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

⚠ WARNING

Driving on a flat tire will cause permanent damage to the tire. Re-inflating a tire after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorized tire service center repair or replace the flat tire as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-4*.

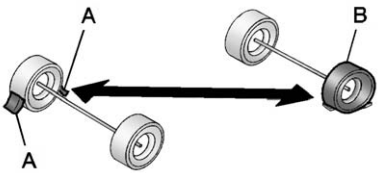
⚠ WARNING

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall causing injury or death. Find a level place to change the tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.
5. Place wheel blocks on both sides of the tire at the opposite corner of the tire being changed.

This vehicle may come with a jack and spare tire or a tire sealant and compressor kit. To use the jacking equipment to change a spare tire safely, follow the instructions below. Then see *Tire Changing on page 10-87*. To use the tire sealant and compressor kit, see *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Relief Button) on page 10-71* or *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Deflation Button) on page 10-78*.

When the vehicle has a flat tire (B), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (A).



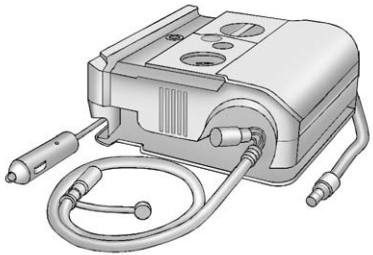
A. Wheel Block

B. Flat Tire

The following information explains how to repair or change a tire.

Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Relief Button)

System Identification



If the vehicle has the tire sealant and compressor kit shown above, see the operating instructions that follow.

If the vehicle has the tire sealant and compressor kit shown above, follow the operating instructions under "Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Deflation Button).

⚠ WARNING

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO)

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-30*.

⚠ WARNING

Overinflating a tire could cause the tire to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tire to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

⚠ WARNING

Storing the tire sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tire sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

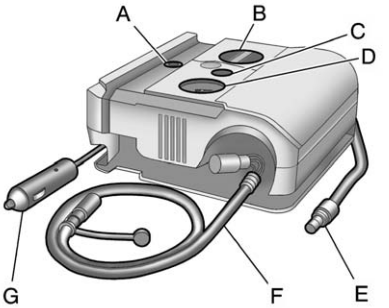
If this vehicle has a tire sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tire and tire changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tire.

The tire sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tire. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tire.

If the tire has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tire is too severely damaged for the tire sealant and compressor kit to be effective. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.

Read and follow all of the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:



A. On/Off Button

B. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)

C. Pressure Relief Button

D. Pressure Gauge

E. Air Only Hose (Black)

F. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)

G. Power Plug

Tire Sealant

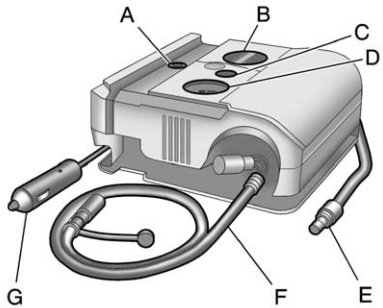
Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the compressor.

Check the tire sealant expiration date on the sealant canister. The sealant canister should be replaced before its expiration date. Replacement sealant canisters are available at your local dealer. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” later in this section.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tire. After usage, the sealant canister and sealant/air hose assembly must be replaced. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” later in this section.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tire

Follow the directions closely for correct sealant usage.



When using the tire sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tire faster.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-4*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-69* for other important safety warnings.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tire.

1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-87*.
2. Unwrap the sealant/air hose (F) and the power plug (G).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.

5. Attach the sealant/air hose (F) onto the tire valve stem. Turn it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (G) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets on page 5-7*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Turn the selector switch (B) clockwise to the Sealant + Air position.
9. Press the on/off button (A) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tire.

   The pressure gauge (D) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tire. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tire, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tire inflates with air only.
10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (D). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.

    The pressure gauge (D) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

    ***Notice:* If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tire. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tire valve. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.**
11. Press the on/off button (A) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    The tire is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tire; therefore, Steps 12–18 must be done immediately after Step 11.

Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (G) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
13. Turn the sealant/air hose (F) counterclockwise to remove it from the tire valve stem.
14. Replace the tire valve stem cap.
15. Return the sealant/air hose (F) and the power plug (G) back in their original locations.

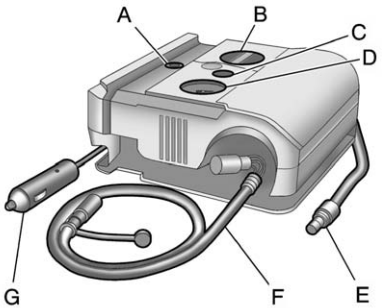
16. If the flat tire was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister and place it in a highly visible location. Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tire is repaired or replaced.
17. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.
18. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
19. Stop at a safe location and check the tire pressure. Refer to Steps 1–11 under “Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured).”

    If the tire pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant cannot seal the tire. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.

    If the tire pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, use the compressor kit to inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.
20. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tire, and vehicle.
21. Dispose of the used sealant canister and sealant/air hose (F) assembly at a local dealer or in accordance with local state codes and practices.
22. Replace it with a new canister available from your dealer.
23. After temporarily sealing a tire using the tire sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer within 161 km (100 mi) of driving to have the tire repaired or replaced.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured)

To use the air compressor to inflate a tire with air only and not sealant:



If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-4*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-69* for other important safety warnings.

1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-87*.
2. Unwrap the air only hose (E) and the power plug (G).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the tire valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (E) onto the tire valve stem by turning it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (G) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets on page 5-7*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Turn the selector switch (B) counterclockwise to the Air Only position.
9. Press the on/off button (A) to turn the compressor on.

   The compressor will inflate the tire with air only.

10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (D). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.

    The pressure gauge (D) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached. If the tire is inflated higher than the recommended pressure, press the pressure relief button (C), if equipped, until the proper pressure reading is reached. This option is only functional when using the air only hose (E).

11. Press the on/off button (A) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (G) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.

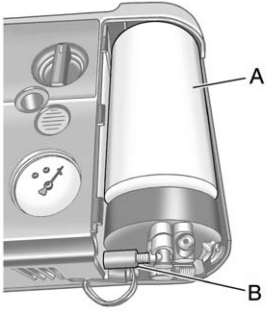
13. Disconnect the air only hose (E) from the tire valve stem, by turning it counterclockwise, and replace the tire valve stem cap.

14. Return the air only hose (E) and the power plug (G) back to their original locations.

15. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.

Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister

To remove the sealant canister:

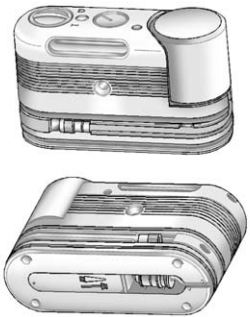


1. Remove the plastic cover.
2. Unscrew the connector (B) from the canister (A).
3. Pull up on the canister (A) to remove it.
4. Replace with a new canister which is available from your dealer.

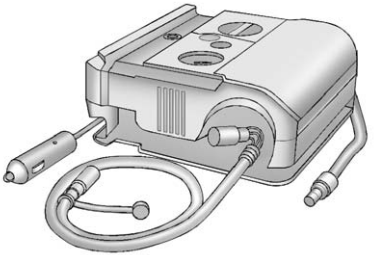
5. Push the new canister into place.
6. Screw the connector (B) to the canister (A).
7. Slide the plastic cover back on.

Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Deflation Button)

System Identification



If the vehicle has the tire sealant and compressor kit shown above, see the operating instructions that follow.



If the vehicle has the tire sealant and compressor kit shown above, follow the operating instructions under "Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Relief Button).

⚠ WARNING

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-30*.

⚠ WARNING

Overinflating a tire could cause the tire to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tire to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

⚠ WARNING

Storing the tire sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tire sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

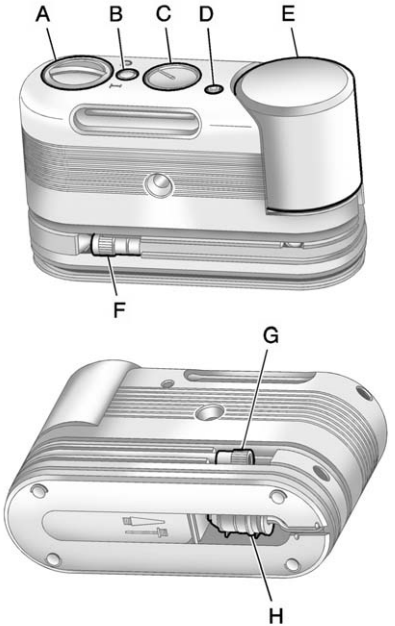
If this vehicle has a tire sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tire and tire changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tire.

The tire sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tire. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tire.

If the tire has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tire is too severely damaged for the tire sealant and compressor kit to be effective. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.

Read and follow all of the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:



A. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)

B. On/Off Button

C. Pressure Gauge

D. Pressure Deflation Button (If equipped)

E. Tire Sealant Canister

F. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)

G. Air Only Hose (Black)

H. Power Plug

Tire Sealant

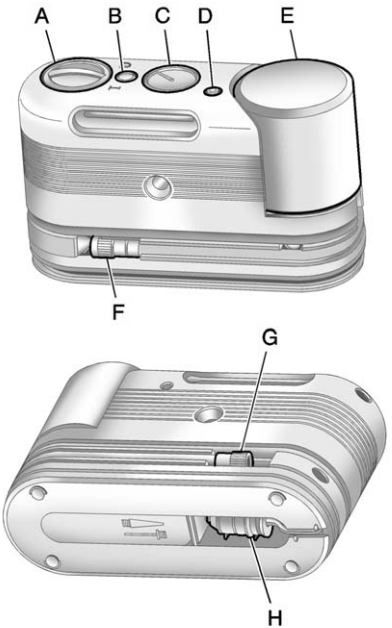
Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the sealant canister.

Check the tire sealant expiration date on the sealant canister. The sealant canister should be replaced before its expiration date. Replacement sealant canisters are available at your local dealer. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tire. After usage, the sealant canister and sealant/air hose assembly must be replaced. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tire

Follow the directions closely for correct sealant usage.



When using the tire sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tire faster.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-4*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-69* for other important safety warnings.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tire.

1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-87*.
2. Unwrap the sealant/air hose (F) and the power plug (H).

3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.

4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.

5. Attach the sealant/air hose (F) onto the tire valve stem. Turn it clockwise until it is tight.

6. Plug the power plug (H) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets on page 5-7*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.

8. Turn the selector switch (A) counterclockwise to the Sealant + Air position.

9. Press the on/off button (B) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tire.

   The pressure gauge (C) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tire. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tire, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tire inflates with air only.

10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (C). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.

    The pressure gauge (C) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

Notice: **If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tire. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tire valve. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.**

11. Press the on/off button (B) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

The tire is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tire; therefore, Steps 12–18 must be done immediately after Step 11.

Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (H) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
13. Turn the sealant/air hose (F) counterclockwise to remove it from the tire valve stem.
14. Replace the tire valve stem cap.
15. Replace the sealant/air hose (F), and the power plug (H) back in their original location.

16. If the flat tire was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the tire sealant canister (E) and place it in a highly visible location. Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tire is repaired or replaced.
17. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.
18. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
19. Stop at a safe location and check the tire pressure. Refer to Steps 1–11 under “Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured).”

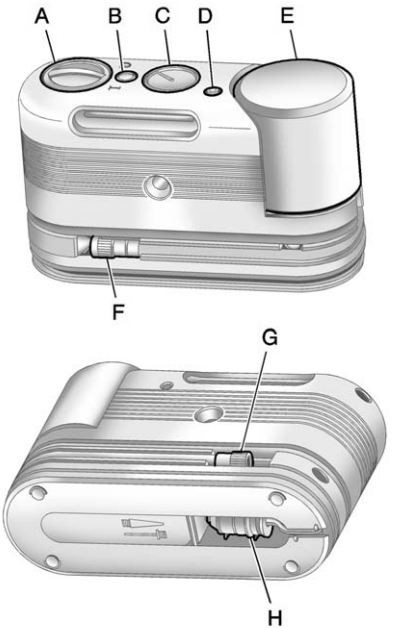
    If the tire pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant cannot seal the tire. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.

    If the tire pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.

20. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tire, and vehicle.
21. Dispose of the used tire sealant canister (E) and sealant/air hose (F) assembly at a local dealer or in accordance with local state codes and practices.
22. Replace it with a new canister available from your dealer.
23. After temporarily sealing a tire using the tire sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer within a 161 km (100 mi) of driving to have the tire repaired or replaced.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured)

To use the air compressor to inflate a tire with air only and not sealant:



If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-4*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-69* for other important safety warnings.

1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-87*.
2. Unwrap the air only hose (G) and the power plug (H).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the tire valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (G) onto the tire valve stem by turning it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (H) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets on page 5-7*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Turn the selector switch (A) clockwise to the Air Only position.
9. Press the on/off button (B) to turn the compressor on.

   The compressor will inflate the tire with air only.
10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (C). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.

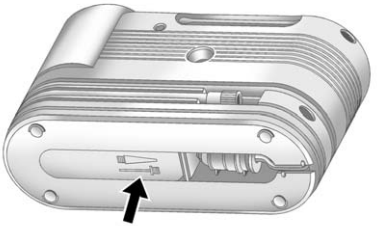
    The pressure gauge (C) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

    If you inflate the tire higher than the recommended pressure you can adjust the excess pressure by pressing the pressure deflation button (D), if equipped, until the proper pressure reading is reached. This option is only functional when using the air only hose (G).

11. Press the on/off button (B) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (H) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
13. Disconnect the air only hose (G) from the tire valve stem by turning it counterclockwise, and replace the tire valve stem cap.
14. Replace the air only hose (G) and the power plug (H) and cord back in their original locations.
15. Place the equipment in the original storage location in the vehicle.



The tire sealant and compressor kit has an accessory adapter located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that may be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister

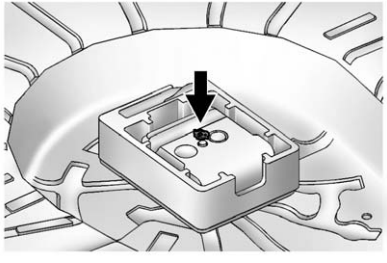
To remove the sealant canister:

1. Unwrap the sealant hose.
2. Press the canister release button.
3. Pull up and remove the canister.
4. Replace with a new canister which is available from your dealer.
5. Push the new canister into place.

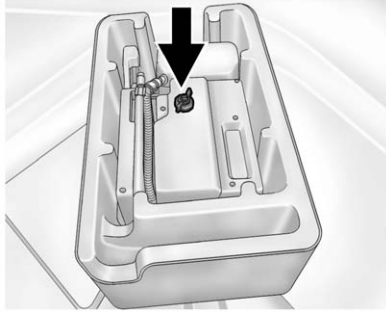
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

To access the tire sealant and compressor kit:

1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk on page 2-13*.
2. Lift the cover.



With Pressure Relief Button



With Pressure Deflation Button

3. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise to remove it.
4. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit.

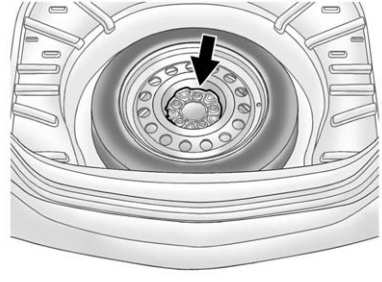
To store the tire sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

Tire Changing

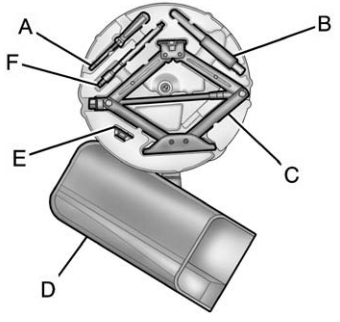
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

The equipment you need is located in the trunk.

1. Open the trunk.
2. Remove the spare tire cover.



3. Turn the retainer nut counterclockwise and remove the spare tire.
4. Place the spare tire next to the tire being changed.



A. Screwdriver

B. Tow Hook (If Equipped)

C. Jack

D. Wrench (In Bag)

E. Trim Removal (If Equipped)

F. Fastener (If Equipped)

The jack and tools are stored below the spare tire.

Place the tools next to the tire being changed.

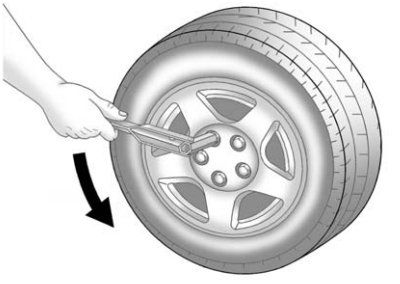
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-69* for more information.
2. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to loosen the wheel nut caps.

   If needed, finish loosening them by hand. The nut caps will not come off of the wheel cover.

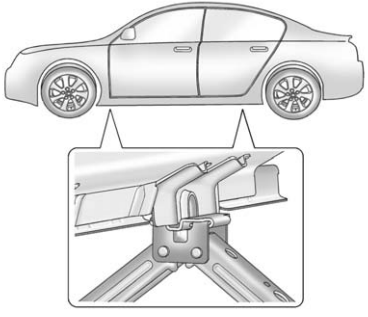
   The edge of the wheel cover could be sharp, so do not try to remove the cover with your bare hands. Do not drop the cap or lay it face down, as it could become scratched or damaged.

   Store the wheel cover in the trunk until you have the flat tire repaired or replaced.



3. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to loosen all of the wheel nuts, but do not remove them yet.

Notice: **Make sure that the jack lift head is in the correct position or you may damage your vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.**



4. Position the jack head, as shown.

   Set the jack to the necessary height before positioning it below the jacking point.

5. Attach the jack lift assist tool to the jack by fitting both ends of the jack and tool over one another.

⚠ WARNING

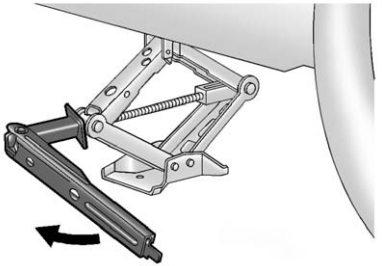
Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

⚠ WARNING

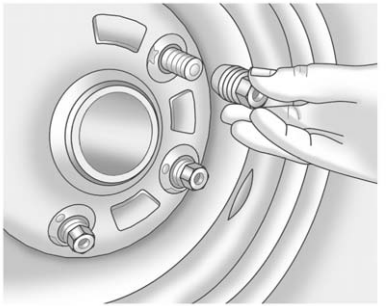
Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.



6. Turn the jack handle clockwise to raise the vehicle far enough off the ground for the compact spare to fit under the vehicle.



7. Remove all of the wheel nuts.
8. Remove the flat tire.

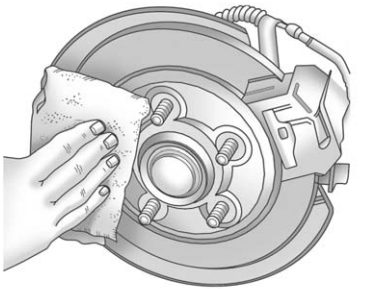
⚠ WARNING

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.



9. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.
10. Install the compact spare tire.

⚠ WARNING

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

11. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel. Turn each nut clockwise by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.
12. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle counterclockwise. Lower the jack completely.

⚠ WARNING

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification after replacing. Follow the torque specification supplied by the aftermarket manufacturer when using accessory locking wheel nuts. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

Notice: **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for the wheel nut torque specification.**

13. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence, as shown.
14. Lower the jack all the way and remove the jack from under the vehicle.
15. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly with the wheel wrench.

Notice: **Wheel covers will not fit on the vehicle's compact spare. If you try to put a wheel cover on the compact spare, the cover or the spare could be damaged.**

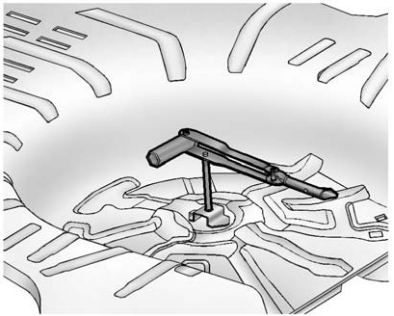
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

⚠ WARNING

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

Store the spare or flat tire in one of the ways shown below. Storage instructions will vary depending on the bolt that came with the vehicle and how it attaches to the vehicle. This vehicle will have a slide in fastener or a screw in fastener.

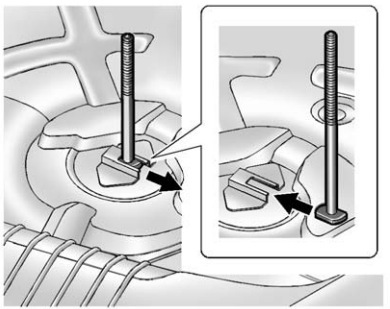
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools With a Screw in Fastener



1. Turn the wrench counterclockwise to remove the fastener.
2. Replace the fastener with the one provided in the foam.
3. Turn the wrench clockwise to tighten the fastener.
4. Replace the foam, jack and tools, and the tire.
5. Turn the retainer nut clockwise to secure the tire.
6. Place the floor cover on the wheel.

Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools With a Slide In Fastener

1. If the flat tire is larger than the spare tire, use the longer mounting bolt.



2. Slide the shorter bolt to remove it from the floor and insert the longer one.

3. Replace the jack and tools in their original storage location.
4. Place the tire, lying flat, facing up in the spare tire well.
5. Turn the retainer nut clockwise to secure the tire.
6. Place the floor cover on the wheel.

The compact spare is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tire with a full-size tire as soon as you can.

Compact Spare Tire

⚠ WARNING

Driving with more than one compact spare tire at a time could result in loss of braking and handling. This could lead to a crash and you or others could be injured. Use only one compact spare tire at a time.

If this vehicle has a compact spare tire, it was fully inflated when the vehicle was new; however, it can lose air after a time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 420 kPa (60 psi).

Stop as soon as possible and check that the spare tire is correctly inflated after installing the spare on the vehicle. The compact spare is designed to perform well at speeds up to 105 km/h (65 mph) for distances up to 5 000 km (3,000 mi), so a trip can be completed and the full-size tire repaired or replaced when possible. However, the compact spare tire will last longer and be in good shape if it is replaced as soon as possible.

Notice: **When the compact spare is installed, do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails which can damage the tire, wheel, and other parts of the vehicle.**

Do not use the compact spare on other vehicles.

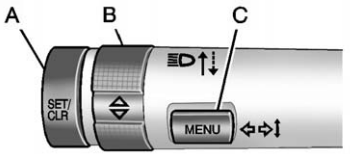
Do not mix the compact spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They will not fit. Keep the spare tire and its wheel together.

Notice: **Tire chains will not fit the compact spare. Using them can damage the vehicle and can damage the chains too. Do not use tire chains on the compact spare.**

Jump Starting

Jump Starting (On-board with eAssist Only)

If the vehicle fails to crank, it may be jump started by using the eAssist battery to charge the 12-volt battery. Use the following procedure to activate the on-board jump start using the DIC controls.



DIC Buttons

A. **SET/CLR**

B. **△ ▽ (Thumbwheel)**

C. **MENU**

With the ignition key in the run position, proceed as follows:

1. Press MENU (C) on the turn signal lever until Vehicle Information Menu is displayed.

   Use △ ▽ (Thumbwheel) (B) to scroll through the menu items until Jump Start is displayed.

2. Press SET/CLR (A) to activate the jump start.

3. The system will then ask for confirmation. If yes is selected, the jump start will begin and the display will show JUMP START ACTIVE, WAIT TO START.

4. When the jump start is complete, the display will show JUMP START COMPLETE. ATTEMPT START.

If the vehicle is started, the on-board jump start function will be automatically disabled. If the vehicle cranks but does not start, the procedure may be repeated again. If the vehicle start is still unsuccessful, the jump start can be attempted using the following jump starting procedure under “Jump Starting (with or without eAssist).” On-board jump starting may be unavailable due to the 12-volt battery charge level, the eAssist battery charge level, power capability, or an issue with the eAssist system. In these cases, the display will not be available because of the power issue, or the DIC will display JUMP START DISABLED. SEE OWNERS MANUAL.

Jump Starting (with or without eAssist)

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery on page 10-25*.

If the battery has run down, try to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ WARNING

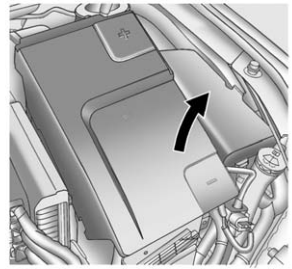
Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

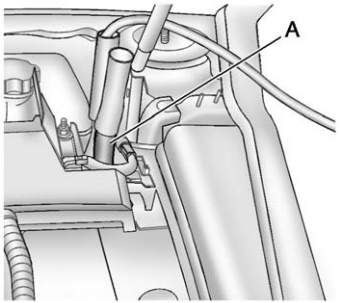
If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Notice: **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the warranty.**

Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.



The jump start positive is located under a trim cover in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle.



This post (A) is used instead of a direct connection to the battery.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Notice: **Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting. If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged.**

2. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.
3. Set the parking brake firmly and put the shift lever in P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-27*.

Notice: **If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting the vehicle.**

4. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF and switch off all lights and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers if needed.

⚠ WARNING

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ WARNING

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low,

(Continued)

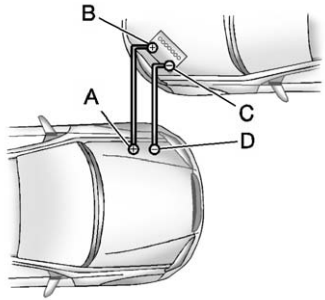
WARNING (Continued)

add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

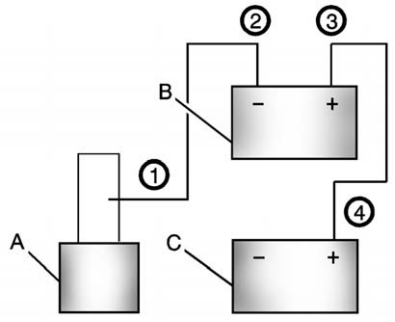


5. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the jump start positive (+) post (A). Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
6. Do not let the other end of the red positive (+) cable touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery (B). Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
7. Connect one end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery (C). Use a remote negative (−) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.

8. Connect the other end of the black negative (–) cable to an unpainted heavy metal engine part (D) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move.
9. Start the engine in the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine at idle speed for at least four minutes.
10. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Notice: **If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**



Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (–) Terminal
B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (–) Terminals
C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles:

1. Disconnect the black negative (−) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (−) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the caps over the positive (+) and negative (–) terminals to their original positions.

Towing

Towing the Vehicle

Notice: **To avoid damage, the disabled vehicle should be towed with all four wheels off the ground. Care must be taken with vehicles that have low ground clearance and/or special equipment. Always flatbed on a car carrier.**

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.

To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes, such as behind a motor home, see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” in this section.

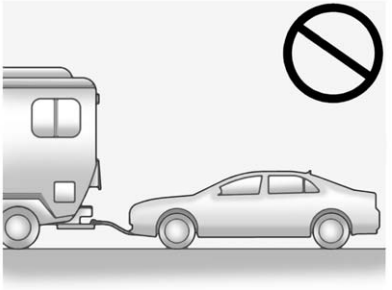
Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle such as a motor home. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be traveled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

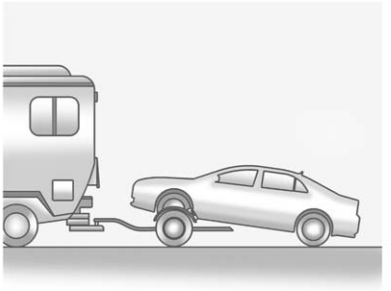
Dinghy Towing



Notice: **If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not tow the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.**

The vehicle was not designed to be towed with all four wheels on the ground. If the vehicle must be towed, a dolly should be used. See “Dolly Towing” that follows for more information.

Dolly Towing from the Front (Front-Wheel Drive)



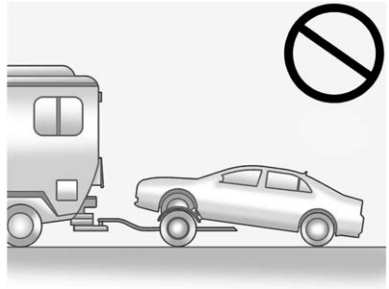
Vehicles with front-wheel drive can be dolly towed from the front.

Use the following procedure to dolly tow the vehicle from the front:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the front wheels onto the dolly.

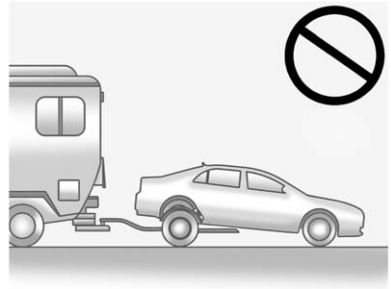
3. Shift the transmission to P (Park).
4. Firmly set the parking brake.
5. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight-ahead position.
6. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
7. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the towing vehicle.
8. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

Dolly Towing from the Front (All-Wheel Drive)



Vehicles with all-wheel drive cannot be dolly towed.

Dolly Towing from the Rear



The vehicle cannot be dolly towed from the rear.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

Notice: **Do not use petroleum based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.**

Notice: **Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8,274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.**

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Notice: **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.**

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Regularly clean bright metal parts with water or chrome polish on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

For aluminum, never use auto or chrome polish, steam, or caustic soap to clean. A coating of wax, rubbed to a high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/ Lenses and Emblems

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" later in this section.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

Weatherstrips

Apply silicone grease on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-12*.

Tires

Use a stiff brush with tire cleaner to clean the tires.

Notice: **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.**

Wheels and Trim — Aluminum or Chrome

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Keep the wheels clean using a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Notice: **Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium, or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.**

Notice: **To avoid surface damage, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. Use only approved cleaners. Also, never drive a vehicle with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. Inspect power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Visually check constant velocity joints, rubber boots, and axle seals for leaks.

Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood hinges, liftgate hinges, and the steel fuel door hinge unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

Underbody Maintenance

Use plain water to flush dirt and debris from the vehicle's underbody. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this. If not removed, rust and corrosion can develop.

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soils. Note that newspapers or dark garments that can transfer color to home furnishings can also permanently transfer color to the vehicle's interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellant from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Your dealer may have products for cleaning the interior. Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. To prevent overspray, apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Cleaners should be removed quickly. Never allow cleaners to remain on the surface being cleaned for extended periods of time.

Cleaners may contain solvents that can become concentrated in the interior. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the doors and windows.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with excessive pressure.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. For liquid cleaners, use approximately 20 drops per 3.78 L (1 gal) of water. A concentrated soap solution will leave a residue that creates streaks and attracts dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. Commercial glass cleaners may be used, if necessary, after cleaning the interior glass with plain water.

Notice: **To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window defogger.**

Fabric/Carpet

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating brush attachment is being used during vacuuming, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean lint-free colorfast cloth with water or club soda. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any color transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by club soda or plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colorfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

Following the cleaning process, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture.

Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces

Use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

Notice: **Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, spot lifters or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim and are not recommended.**

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windshield under certain conditions.

Notice: **Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Floor Mats

⚠ WARNING

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

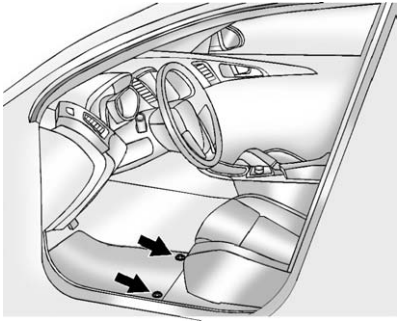
Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage:

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that GM certified floor mats be purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats

Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock each retainer and remove.



Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snap into position.

Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place.

Verify the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
General Information 11-1

Maintenance Schedule
Maintenance Schedule 11-3

Special Application Services
Special Application Services 11-8

Additional Maintenance and Care
Additional Maintenance and Care 11-9

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-12
Maintenance Replacement Parts 11-14

Maintenance Records
Maintenance Records 11-15

General Information

Your vehicle is an important investment. This section describes the required maintenance for the vehicle. Follow this schedule to help protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance. It may also help to maintain the value of the vehicle if it is sold. It is the responsibility of the owner to have all required maintenance performed.

Your dealer has trained technicians who can perform required maintenance using genuine replacement parts. They have up-to-date tools and equipment for fast and accurate diagnostics. Many dealers have extended evening and Saturday hours, courtesy transportation, and online scheduling to assist with service needs.

Your dealer recognizes the importance of providing competitively priced maintenance and repair services. With trained technicians, the dealer is the place for routine maintenance such as oil changes and tire rotations and additional maintenance items like tires, brakes, batteries, and wiper blades.

Notice: **Damage caused by improper maintenance can lead to costly repairs and may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, recommended fluids, and lubricants are important to keep the vehicle in good working condition.**

The Tire Rotation and Required Services are the responsibility of the vehicle owner. It is recommended to have your dealer perform these services every 12 000 km/7,500 mi. Proper vehicle maintenance helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, improves fuel economy, and reduces vehicle emissions.

Because of the way people use vehicles, maintenance needs vary. There may need to be more frequent checks and services.
The Additional Required Services - Normal are for vehicles that:

- Carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-12*.
- Are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- Use the recommended fuel. See *Recommended Fuel on page 9-53*.

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal chart.

The Additional Required Services - Severe are for vehicles that are:

- Mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather.
- Mainly driven in hilly or mountainous terrain.
- Frequently towing a trailer.
- Used for high speed or competitive driving.
- Used for taxi, police, or delivery service.

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe chart.

⚠ WARNING

Performing maintenance work can be dangerous and can cause serious injury. Perform maintenance work only if the required information, proper tools, and equipment are available.
If they are not, see your dealer to have a trained technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 10-4*.

Maintenance Schedule

Owner Checks and Services

At Each Fuel Stop

- Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

Once a Month

- Check the tire inflation pressures. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.
- Inspect the tires for wear. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-60*.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-22*.

Engine Oil Change

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays, have the engine oil and filter changed within the next 1 000 km/600 mi. If driven under the best conditions, the engine oil life system might not indicate the need for vehicle service for more than a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and the oil life system must be reset. Your trained dealer technician can perform this work. If the engine oil life system is reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 5 000 km/3,000 mi since the last service. Reset the oil life system when the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*.

Tire Rotation and Required Services Every 12 000 km/ 7,500 mi

Rotate the tires, if recommended for the vehicle, and perform the following services. See *Tire Rotation on page 10-61*.

- Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. If needed, change engine oil and filter, and reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9* and *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*.
- Check engine coolant level. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-16*.
- Check windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-22*.
- Visually inspect windshield wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. See *Exterior Care on page 10-102*. Replace worn or damaged wiper blades. See *Wiper Blade Replacement on page 10-29*.

- Check tire inflation pressures. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-54*.
- Inspect tire wear. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-60*.
- Visually check for fluid leaks.
- Inspect engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-13*.
- Inspect brake system.
- Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. See *Exterior Care on page 10-102*.
- Check restraint system components. See *Safety System Check on page 3-20*.
- Visually inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.
- Visually inspect exhaust system and nearby heat shields for loose or damaged parts.
- Lubricate body components. See *Exterior Care on page 10-102*.
- Check starter switch. See *Starter Switch Check on page 10-27*.
- Check automatic transmission shift lock control function. See *Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check on page 10-27*.
- Check ignition transmission lock. See *Ignition Transmission Lock Check on page 10-28*.
- Check parking brake and automatic transmission park mechanism. See *Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check on page 10-28*.
- Check accelerator pedal for damage, high effort, or binding. Replace if needed.
- Visually inspect gas strut for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage. Check the hold open ability of the strut. See your dealer if service is required.
- Check tire sealant expiration date, if equipped. See *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Relief Button) on page 10-71* or *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit (With Pressure Deflation Button) on page 10-78*.
- Inspect sunroof track and seal, if equipped. See *Sunroof on page 2-22*.

Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services – Normal	12 000 km/7,500 mi	24 000 km/15,000 mi	36 000 km/22,500 mi	48 000 km/30,000 mi	60 000 km/37,500 mi	72 000 km/45,000 mi	84 000 km/52,500 mi	96 000 km/60,000 mi	108 000 km/67,500 mi	120 000 km/75,000 mi	132 000 km/82,500 mi	144 000 km/90,000 mi	156 000 km/97,500 mi	168 000 km/105,000 mi	180 000 km/112,500 mi	192 000 km/120,000 mi	204 000 km/127,500 mi	216 000 km/135,000 mi	228 000 km/142,500 mi	240 000 km/150,000 mi
Rotate tires and perform Required Services. Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. Change engine oil and filter, if needed.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace passenger compartment air filter, if equipped. (a)			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓		
Inspect evaporative control system. (b)						✓						✓						✓		
Replace engine air cleaner filter. (c)						✓						✓						✓		
Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires.													✓							
Change automatic transmission fluid, if equipped. If filter is serviceable, change filter.													✓							
Change transfer case fluid, if equipped with AWD. (d)													✓							
Drain, flush, and fill engine cooling system. (e)																				✓
Visually inspect accessory drive belts. (f)																				✓
Replace accessory drive belt, if equipped with eAssist system.										✓										

Footnotes — Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services — Normal

a) Or every two years, whichever comes first. More frequent replacement may be needed if the vehicle is driven in areas with heavy traffic, areas with poor air quality, or areas with high dust levels. Replacement may also be needed if there is a reduction in air flow, excessive window fogging, or odors.

b) Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing, and condition. Check that the purge valve, if the vehicle has one, works properly. Replace as needed.

c) Or every four years, whichever comes first.

d) Do not directly power wash the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.

e) Or every five years, whichever comes first. See *Cooling System on page 10-15*.

f) Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. Inspect for fraying, excessive cracking, or damage; replace, if needed.

Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services – Severe	12 000 km/7,500 mi	24 000 km/15,000 mi	36 000 km/22,500 mi	48 000 km/30,000 mi	60 000 km/37,500 mi	72 000 km/45,000 mi	84 000 km/52,500 mi	96 000 km/60,000 mi	108 000 km/67,500 mi	120 000 km/75,000 mi	132 000 km/82,500 mi	144 000 km/90,000 mi	156 000 km/97,500 mi	168 000 km/105,000 mi	180 000 km/112,500 mi	192 000 km/120,000 mi	204 000 km/127,500 mi	216 000 km/135,000 mi	228 000 km/142,500 mi	240 000 km/150,000 mi
Rotate tires and perform Required Services. Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. Change engine oil and filter, if needed.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace passenger compartment air filter, if equipped. (a)			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓		
Inspect evaporative control system. (b)						✓						✓						✓		
Replace engine air cleaner filter. (c)						✓						✓						✓		
Change automatic transmission fluid, if equipped. If filter is serviceable, change filter.						✓						✓						✓		
Change transfer case fluid, if equipped with AWD. (d)						✓						✓						✓		
Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires.													✓							
Drain, flush, and fill engine cooling system. (e)																				✓
Visually inspect accessory drive belts. (f)																				✓
Replace accessory drive belt, if equipped with eAssist system.										✓										

Footnotes — Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services — Severe

a) Or every two years, whichever comes first.

b) Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing, and condition. Check that the purge valve, if the vehicle has one, works properly. Replace as needed.

c) Or every four years, whichever comes first.

d) Do not directly power wash the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.

e) Or every five years, whichever comes first. See *Cooling System on page 10-15*.

f) Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. Inspect for fraying, excessive cracking, or damage; replace, if needed.

Special Application Services

- Severe Commercial Use Vehicles Only: Lubricate chassis components every 5 000 km/ 3,000 mi.
- Have underbody flushing service performed once a year.

Additional Maintenance and Care

Your vehicle is an important investment and caring for it properly may help to avoid future costly repairs. To maintain vehicle performance, additional maintenance services may be required. It is recommended that your dealer perform these services — their trained dealer technicians know your vehicle best. Your dealer can also perform a thorough assessment with a multi-point inspection to recommend when your vehicle may need attention. The following list is intended to explain the services and conditions to look for that may indicate services are required.

Battery

The battery supplies power to start the engine and operate any additional electrical accessories.

- To avoid break-down or failure to start the vehicle, maintain a battery with full cranking power.
- Trained dealer technicians have the diagnostic equipment to test the battery and ensure that the connections and cables are corrosion-free.

Belts

- Belts may need replacing if they squeak or show signs of cracking or splitting.
- Trained dealer technicians can inspect the belts and recommend replacement when necessary.

Brakes

Brakes stop the vehicle and are crucial to safe driving.

- Signs of brake wear may include chirping, grinding, or squealing noises, or difficulty stopping.
- Trained dealer technicians have access to tools and equipment to inspect the brakes and recommend quality parts engineered for the vehicle.

Fluids

Proper fluid levels and approved fluids protect the vehicle's systems and components. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-12* for GM approved fluids.

- Engine oil and windshield washer fluid levels should be checked at every fuel fill.
- Instrument cluster lights may come on to indicate that fluids may be low and need to be filled.

Hoses

Hoses transport fluids and should be regularly inspected to ensure that there are no cracks or leaks. With a multi-point inspection, your dealer can inspect the hoses and advise if replacement is needed.

Lamps

Properly working headlamps, taillamps, and brake lamps are important to see and be seen on the road.

- Signs that the headlamps need attention include dimming, failure to light, cracking, or damage. The brake lamps need to be checked periodically to ensure that they light when braking.
- With a multi-point inspection, your dealer can check the lamps and note any concerns.

Shocks and Struts

Shocks and struts help aid in control for a smoother ride.

- Signs of wear may include steering wheel vibration, bounce/sway while braking, longer stopping distance, or uneven tire wear.
- As part of the multi-point inspection, trained dealer technicians can visually inspect the shocks and struts for signs of leaking, blown seals, or damage, and can advise when service is needed.

Tires

Tires need to be properly inflated, rotated, and balanced. Maintaining the tires can save money, fuel, and can reduce the risk of tire failure.

- Signs that the tires need to be replaced include three or more visible treadwear indicators; cord or fabric showing through the rubber; cracks or cuts in the tread or sidewall; or a bulge or split in the tire.
- Trained dealer technicians can inspect and recommend the right tires. Your dealer can also provide tire/wheel balancing services to ensure smooth vehicle operation at all speeds. Your dealer sells and services name brand tires.

Vehicle Care

To help keep the vehicle looking like new, vehicle care products are available from your dealer. For information on how to clean and protect the vehicle's interior and exterior, see *Interior Care on page 10-105* and *Exterior Care on page 10-102*.

Wheel Alignment

Wheel alignment is critical for ensuring that the tires deliver optimal wear and performance.

- Signs that the alignment may need to be adjusted include pulling, improper vehicle handling, or unusual tire wear.
- Your dealer has the required equipment to ensure proper wheel alignment.

Windshield

For safety, appearance, and the best viewing, keep the windshield clean and clear.

- Signs of damage include scratches, cracks, and chips.
- Trained dealer technicians can inspect the windshield and recommend proper replacement if needed.

Wiper Blades

Wiper blades need to be cleaned and kept in good condition to provide a clear view.

- Signs of wear include streaking, skipping across the windshield, and worn or split rubber.
- Trained dealer technicians can check the wiper blades and replace them when needed.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	Use only engine oil licensed to the dexos1 specfication, or equivalent, of the proper SAE viscosity grade. ACDelco dexos1 Synthetic Blend is recommended. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.
Engine Coolant (3.6L V6 Engine)	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-16*.
Engine Coolant (2.4L L4 Engine)	Always use the pre-mixed 50/50 mixture of deionized water and DEX-COOL Coolant available at your dealer.
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. 88862806, in Canada 88862807).
Windshield Washer	Optikleen® Washer Solvent.
Hydraulic Power Steering System	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor, and Release Pawl	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hood and Door Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. 12345579, in Canada 992887).

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	55560894	A3128C
Engine Oil Filter		
2.4L L4 Engine	12605566	PF457G
3.6L V6 Engine	89017525	PF63
Passenger Compartment Air Filter	13271191	CF176
Spark Plugs		
2.4L L4 Engine	12620540	41–108
3.6L V6 Engine	12622561	41–109
Wiper Blades		
Driver Side – 65 cm (25.6 in)	25892079	—
Passenger Side – 45 cm (17.7 in)	25882578	—

Maintenance Records

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. Retain all maintenance receipts.

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Service Parts Identification Label 12-1

Vehicle Data
Capacities and Specifications 12-2
Engine Drive Belt Routing . . . 12-4

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This legal identifier is in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the left side of the vehicle. It can be seen through the windshield from outside. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See “Engine Specifications” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for the vehicle's engine code.

Service Parts Identification Label

This label, in the trunk, has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Model designation.
- Paint information.
- Production options and special equipment.

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications

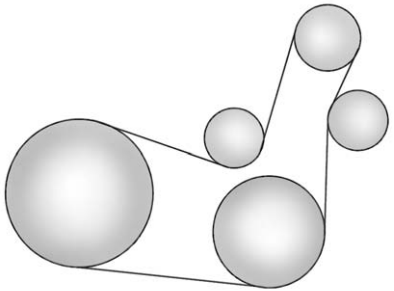
Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Air Conditioning Refrigerant R134a	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant label located under the hood. See your dealer for more information.	
Engine Cooling System		
2.4L L4 Engine	9.6 L	10.1 qt
3.6L V6 Engine	7.1 L	7.5 qt
Engine Oil with Filter		
2.4L L4 Engine	4.7 L	5.0 qt
3.6L V6 Engine	5.7 L	6.0 qt
Fuel Tank		
2.4L L4 Engine	60.0 L	15.8 gal
3.6L V6 Engine, AWD	74.0 L	19.5 gal
3.6L V6 Engine, FWD	70.5 L	18.6 gal

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Transmission Fluid* (Drain and Refill)		
2.4L L4 Engine, 6–Speed Automatic	5.0 L	5.3 qt
3.6L V6 Engine, 6–Speed Automatic	5.0 L	5.3 qt
Wheel Nut Torque	150 N•m	110 lb ft
*See *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 10-13* for information on checking fluid level.		
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

Engine Specifications

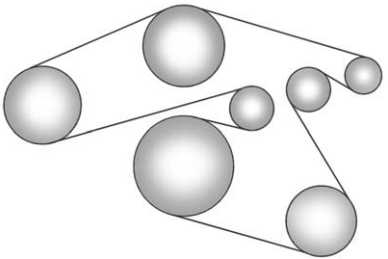
Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
2.4L L4 Engine	R	Automatic	0.9 mm (0.035 in)
3.6L V6 Engine	3	Automatic	1.10 mm (0.043 in)

Engine Drive Belt Routing



2.4L L4 Engine

Belt removal and installation requires special tools. See your dealer for service.



3.6L V6 Engine

Customer Information

Customer Information
Customer Satisfaction Procedure (U.S. and Canada) 13-1
Customer Satisfaction Procedure (Mexico) 13-3
Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada) 13-5
Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) 13-5
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users (U.S. and Canada) 13-6
Online Owner Center 13-6
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program (U.S. and Canada) 13-7
Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) 13-7
Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) 13-10
Scheduling Service Appointments (U.S. and Canada) 13-13
Courtesy Transportation Program (U.S. and Canada) 13-14
Collision Damage Repair (U.S. and Canada) 13-15
Service Publications Ordering Information 13-18

Reporting Safety Defects
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 13-19
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 13-19
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 13-20

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-20
Event Data Recorders 13-20
OnStar® 13-21
Navigation System 13-21
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-22
Radio Frequency Statement 13-22

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure (U.S. and Canada)

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Buick. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE: Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service, or parts manager, contact the owner of your dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO: If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by your dealership without further help, in the U.S., call 1-800-521-7300. In Canada, contact General Motors of Canada Customer Care Centre at 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French).

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give the inquiry prompt attention. Have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Buick, remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest following Step One first.

STEP THREE — U.S. Owners: Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with the new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you can file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line® Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out-of-court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
www.dr.bbb.org/goauto

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

STEP THREE — Canadian Owners: In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, General Motors of Canada Limited wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge Mediation/Arbitration program. General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in approximately 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685, or call the General Motors Customer Care Centre, 1-800-263-3777 (English), 1-800-263-7854 (French), or write to:

Mediation/Arbitration Program
c/o Customer Care Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

The inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Customer Satisfaction Procedure (Mexico)

Did you get the Warranty Extension Plan? This plan is recommended by General Motors to supplement the warranty included with the new vehicle purchase.

See your dealer for details.

Customer Assistance Procedure

Owner satisfaction and goodwill are very important to your dealer and General Motors.

Normally, any problem with the transaction, sale, or usage of the vehicle must be handled by your dealer sales or service departments. However, we recognize that despite the good intentions of all parties involved, sometimes a misunderstanding may occur.

If you have a problem that has not been satisfactorily handled through the normal means, we suggest the following steps:

STEP ONE

Explain your case to your dealer service agent, service manager, dealer sales agent, or sales manager, depending on your case.

Make sure that they have all necessary information. They are interested in your continual satisfaction.

STEP TWO

If you are not satisfied, please contact the general manager or your dealership owner to ask for their help. If they are not able to resolve your case, ask them to contact the right people at General Motors for support, if needed.

STEP THREE

If your case is not resolved in a reasonable amount of time by your dealer, please call the General Motors Customer Assistance Center (CAC) and provide the following information:

- Name
- Address
- Phone number
- Model year
- Brand
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Mileage
- Delivery date
- Description of the problem
- Dealership name
- Dealership address

See *Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-5* or *Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) on page 13-5* for more information.

Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada)

Buick encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Buick, the letter should be addressed to:

United States

Buick Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33136
Detroit, MI 48232-5136
www.Buick.com

1-800-521-7300
1-800-832-8425 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance:
1-800-252-1112

From Puerto Rico:

1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)

From U.S. Virgin Islands:

1-800-496-9994

Canada

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Care Centre, Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7
www.gm.ca

1-800-263-3777 (English)
1-800-263-7854 (French)
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance:
1-800-268-6800

All Overseas Locations

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands)

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Av. Ejercito Nacional #843
Col. Granada
C.P. 11520, Mexico, D.F.

01-800-466-0818
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0818

Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico)

To contact the Customer Assistance Center (CAC), use the phone numbers listed in this section. Customer assistance is available Monday through Friday, 08:00 to 20:00 hours, and Saturdays from 08:00 to 15:00 hours.

All e-mail inquiries to the Customer Assistance Center (CAC) should be sent to: cac.buick@gm.com.

Mexico

From Mexico City

5329-0818

From Other Mexico Locations

01-800-466-0818

United States and Canada

1-800-521-7300

Costa Rica

00-800-052-1005

Guatemala

1-800-999-5252

Panama

00-800-052-0001

Dominican Republic

1-888-751-5301

El Salvador

800-6273

Honduras

800-0122-6101

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users (U.S. and Canada)

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Buick has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can communicate with Buick by dialing: 1-800-832-8425. TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.

Online Owner Center

Manage your vehicle (U.S.) at buick.com. Click on "Owners," then "Manage My Buick/ Owners Login."

Information and services customized for your specific vehicle — all in one convenient place.

- Digital owner manual, warranty information, and more.
- Storage for online service and maintenance records.
- Buick dealer locator for service nationwide.
- Exclusive privileges and offers.
- Recall notices for your specific vehicle.
- OnStar and GM Cardmember Services Earnings summaries.

Other Helpful Links:

Buick — www.buick.com

Buick Merchandise — www.buickmerchandise.com

Help Center — http://www.buick.com/help/faqs.html

- FAQ (Frequently Asked Questions)
- Contact Us

Buick Owner Centre (Canada) buickowner.ca

Take a trip to the Buick Owner Centre:

- Chat live with online help representatives.
- Use the Vehicle Tools section.
- Access third party enthusiast sites and social media networks.
- Locate owner resources such as lease-end, financing, and warranty information.
- Retrieve your favorite articles, quizzes, tips and multimedia galleries organized into the Features and Auto Care Sections.
- Download the owner manual for your vehicle, quickly and easily.
- Find the Buick-recommended maintenance services for your vehicle.

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program (U.S. and Canada)

This program is available to qualified applicants for cost reimbursement of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for the vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift for the vehicle.

For more information on the limited offer, visit www.gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text Telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details. TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada)

For U.S.-purchased vehicles, call **1-800-252-1112; (Text Telephone (TTY): 1-888-889-2438)**.

For Canadian-purchased vehicles, call **1-800-268-6800**.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

Calling for Assistance

When calling Roadside Assistance, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number.
- Telephone number of your location.
- Location of the vehicle.
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle.
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle.
- Description of the problem.

Coverage

Services are provided up to 5 years/ 160 000 km (100,000 mi), whichever comes first.

In the U.S., anyone driving the vehicle is covered. In Canada, a person driving the vehicle without permission from the owner is not covered.

Roadside Assistance is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Buick and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

Buick and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or payment to an owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

Services Provided

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. A remote unlock may be available if you have OnStar®. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow from a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Buick dealer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is also given when the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, or snow.

- **Flat Tire Change:** Service to change a flat tire with the spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is the owner's responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.
- **Battery Jump Start:** Service to jump start a dead battery.

Services Not Included in Roadside Assistance

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws.
- Legal fines.
- Mounting, dismounting, or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.
- Towing or services for vehicles driven on a non-public road or highway.

Services Specific to Canadian-Purchased Vehicles

- **Fuel delivery:** Reimbursement is approximately $5 Canadian. Diesel fuel delivery may be restricted. Propane and other fuels are not provided through this service.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Vehicle registration is required.
- **Trip Routing Service:** Detailed maps of North America are provided when requested either with the most direct route or the most scenic route. There is a six request limit per year. Additional travel information is also available. Allow three weeks for delivery.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** Must be over 250 kilometers from where your trip was started to qualify. General Motors of Canada Limited requires pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair orders. Once authorization has been received, the Roadside Assistance advisor will help you make arrangements and explain how to receive payment.
- **Alternative Service:** If assistance cannot be provided right away, the Roadside Assistance advisor may give permission to get local emergency road service. You will receive payment, up to $100, after sending the original receipt to Roadside Assistance. Mechanical failures may be covered, however any cost for parts and labor for repairs not covered by the warranty are the owner responsibility.

Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico)

As a new owner, your vehicle is automatically enrolled in the Roadside Assistance program. The services are available at no cost under the terms and conditions of the program. The Roadside Assistance program is not part of, or included, in the coverage provided by the new vehicle limited warranty.

Roadside Assistance provides assistance to the driver and passengers while driving the vehicle within your city of residence or on any passable road in Mexico, the United States, and Canada. Services are subject to the limitations described in the following pages. Program coverage varies by country.

Roadside Assistance is available 24 hours a day, 365 days of the year.

This program expires two years from the date of the invoice for the vehicle, regardless of vehicle mileage and changes in vehicle ownership.

For more information about the renewal of this program at the end of its term, contact the Buick Customer Assistance Center at 01-800-466-0818.

Services Provided

- **Flat Tire Change**: If unable to change a flat tire, Roadside Assistance will provide towing service to the nearest authorized Buick dealership. It is the owner's responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire. This service is limited to the transfer of the vehicle to the repair facility.
- **Emergency Fuel Delivery**: Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service**: Service to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out.
- **Battery Jump Start**: Service to jump start a dead battery.
- ***Emergency Messages**: Transmission of urgent phone messages.
- ***Emergency Calls**: Call for emergency services.
- ***Dealership Location Assistance**: Information regarding addresses and telephone numbers for Buick dealers.

- **Emergency Towing**: Tow to the nearest dealer for warranty service if the vehicle cannot be driven.

  If the vehicle is involved in an accident during the commission of a crime, administrative violation, or breach of traffic regulations, Roadside Assistance will not provide service. When the vehicle is not accessible to be towed, all maneuvers required to access it will be at the owner's expense.

  If the vehicle is in another city outside of your residence, Roadside Assistance is limited to moving the vehicle to the nearest dealer. If you would like the vehicle moved to a different dealer, you will be asked to cover the difference in cost at the time of the move.

  If the vehicle cannot be received by the nearest Buick dealer due to scheduling conflicts, the vehicle will be taken to a safe place where it will remain for up to 48 hours until it can be taken to the dealer. If the storage costs exceed the amount authorized, the owner is responsible to pay the difference at the time of service. Contact Roadside Assistance for more information on authorized amounts.

- ***Trip Interruption**: This service is provided if you are prevented from further usage of your vehicle while traveling and it is not possible for the nearest Buick dealership to repair the vehicle the same day, requiring the vehicle to stay at the dealership for a night or more. If this happens, in addition to the previously listed services and prior to confirmation by the dealership, you are entitled to choose one of the following alternatives, within the limits of existing Roadside Assistance program guidelines. If the costs exceed the amount authorized for these services, you must pay the difference at the time of service.

  Roadside Assistance will coordinate hotel accommodations for all vehicle travelers for up to two nights.

  A rental car will be provided for up to two days and the vehicle must be returned to its original destination, excluding vehicles with a carrying capacity greater than 3.5 tons.

Complimentary Transportation: If you prefer to continue your trip to the intended destination or return to your place of residence, and the trip requires more than eight hours driving on the road, transportation for the driver and passengers by first class bus or coach commercial airline will be provided to a location chosen by Roadside Assistance, depending on availability at the chosen destination. Restrictions apply based on vehicle specifications.

If you are on the road, taxi service to the nearest bus station or airport will be provided.

- ***Complimentary Transportation for Vehicle Pick Up**: Transportation to pick up your vehicle after repairs are complete. Once the dealer has reported that the vehicle has been repaired, Roadside Assistance will provide bus or commercial airline one-way service (subject to availability) for the person designated by you to collect your vehicle at the dealership's location if you or the designated person are not in the same town or city as the dealership.

*These services are not provided for U.S. or Canada residents. All services provided in the U.S. and Canada are at the owner's expense and will be reimbursed by Roadside Assistance.

Services Not Included in Roadside Assistance

Roadside Assistance does not cover or reimburse services for the following:

- Events caused by fraud or bad faith by the driver.
- Vehicle immobilization situations due to a major force or unforeseen circumstances, such as natural phenomena of an extraordinary nature, earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, and other cyclonic storms.
- Vehicle immobilization situations arising from car accidents caused by the driver of the vehicle or third parties. This means any occurrence that causes physical injury to the occupants and/or the vehicle caused by external forces.
- Acts of terrorism, riot or uproar, armed forces or police actions which prevent timely delivery of assistance services.

- Food service, beverages, telephone calls, or other extra costs. Accommodation costs apply only to Mexico per the terms and conditions of the Roadside Assistance program.
- Any damage to the vehicle without intent, derived from the services provided.
- Cost of towing a trailer when choosing a Buick dealer that is nearest to the temporary storage facility for the disabled vehicle.
- Cost of all maneuvers required to access the vehicle when it is not available to be towed.
- Cost of fuel provided.

Routine vehicle repair costs are not covered by the Roadside Assistance program. For more information, see your new vehicle warranty.

Contacting Roadside Assistance

Roadside Assistance services are of no cost to you and available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. Costs are only incurred in situations that exceed the limits of the program, some of which are listed previously in this section.

To contact Roadside Assistance by phone, use the following numbers:

Mexico

01-800-466-0818

United States

1-866-466-8197

Canada

1-800-268-6800

E-mail

asistencia.buick@gm.com

Buick reserves the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

Scheduling Service Appointments (U.S. and Canada)

When the vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising the service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If the vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If your dealer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for same-day repair.

Courtesy Transportation Program (U.S. and Canada)

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper-to-Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada), extended powertrain, and/or warranties specific to e-Assist in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several Courtesy Transportation options are available to assist in reducing inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, GM helps to minimize inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Shuttle service is the preferred means of offering Courtesy Transportation. Dealers may provide shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round-trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters of your dealer's area.

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If the vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, and public transportation is used instead of your dealer's shuttle service, the expense must be supported by original receipts and can only be up to the maximum amount allowed by GM for shuttle service. In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your dealer for information regarding the allowance amounts for reimbursement of fuel or other transportation costs.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

Your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if the vehicle is kept for an overnight warranty repair. Rental reimbursement will be limited and must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

It may not be possible to provide a like vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact your dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change, or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Collision Damage Repair (U.S. and Canada)

If the vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish the vehicle resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which the vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are the best choice to ensure that the vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part may be an acceptable choice to maintain the vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance; however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for the vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts is not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your dealer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state-of-the-art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Insuring the Vehicle

Protect your investment in the GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms.

Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to the GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs through the use of aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you ensure that the vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If the vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that ensures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read the lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of the lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move the vehicle only if its position puts you in danger, or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.

Give only the necessary information to police and other parties involved in the crash.

For emergency towing see *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-10*.

Gather the following information:

- Driver name, address, and telephone number.
- Driver license number.
- Owner name, address, and telephone number.
- Vehicle license plate number.
- Vehicle make, model, and model year.
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Insurance company and policy number.
- General description of the damage to the other vehicle.

Choose a reputable repair facility that uses quality replacement parts. See “Collision Parts” earlier in this section.

If the airbag has inflated, see *What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? on page 3-27*.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that the vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take the vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by the GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with the repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember, if the vehicle is leased, you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as the cost stays within reasonable limits.

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on the engines, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give additional technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of the vehicle.

Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The Owner Manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE:
$35.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

Without Portfolio: Owner Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE:
$25.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

Current and Past Models

Technical Service Bulletins and Manuals are available for current and past model GM vehicles.

ORDER TOLL FREE:
1-800-551-4123 Monday – Friday
8:00 AM – 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. at: www.helminc.com.

Or write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Make checks payable in U.S. funds.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that the vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, and notify General Motors of Canada Limited. Call Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety Branch
80 rue Noel
Gatineau, QC J8Z 0A1

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, please notify General Motors.

Call 1-800-521-7300, or write:

Buick Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33136
Detroit, MI 48232-5136

In Canada, call 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French), or write:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Care Centre, Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

This GM vehicle has a number of sophisticated computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy airbags in a crash, and, if so equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help your dealer technician service the vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how you operate the vehicle, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may also retain the owner's personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle has an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Important: EDR data is recorded by the vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access this data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

OnStar®

If the vehicle is equipped with an active OnStar system, that system may also record data in crash or near crash-like situations. The OnStar Terms and Conditions provides information on data collection and use and is available at www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada), or by pressing the button and speaking to an advisor. See *OnStar Overview on page 14-1* for more information.

Navigation System

If the vehicle has a navigation system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. Refer to the navigation manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as key fobs for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in GM vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other GM system containing personal information.

Radio Frequency Statement

This vehicle has systems that operate on a radio frequency that comply with Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and with Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause harmful interference.
2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to any of these systems by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

OnStar

OnStar Overview
OnStar Overview 14-1

OnStar Services
Emergency 14-2
Security 14-2
Navigation 14-2
Connections 14-4
Diagnostics 14-5

OnStar Additional Information
OnStar Additional Information 14-5

OnStar Overview

If equipped, this vehicle has a comprehensive, in-vehicle system that can connect to a live Advisor for Emergency, Security, Navigation, Connection, and Diagnostic Services.

The OnStar system status light is next to the OnStar buttons. If the status light is:

- Solid Green: System is ready.
- Flashing Green: On a call.
- Red: Indicates a problem.

Push or call 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) to speak to an Advisor.

Push to:

- Make a call, end a call, or answer an incoming call.
- Give OnStar Hands-Free Calling voice commands.
- Give OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation voice commands. Requires the available Directions and Connections service plan.

Push to connect to a live Advisor to:

- Verify account information or update contact information.
- Get driving directions. Requires the available Directions and Connections service plan.
- Receive On-Demand Diagnostics for a check on the vehicle's key operating systems.
- Receive Roadside Assistance.

Push to get a priority connection to an Emergency Advisor available 24/7 to:

- Get help for an emergency.
- Be a Good Samaritan or respond to an AMBER Alert.
- Get crisis assistance and evacuation routes.

OnStar Services

Emergency

With Automatic Crash Response, the built-in system can automatically connect to help in a crash even if you cannot ask for it.

Push to connect to an Emergency Advisor. GPS technology is used to identify the vehicle location and can provide critical information to emergency personnel. The Advisor is also trained to offer critical assistance in emergency situations.

Security

OnStar provides services like Stolen Vehicle Assistance, Remote Ignition Block, and Roadside Assistance, if the vehicle is equipped with these services. OnStar can unlock the vehicle doors remotely, if it is equipped with automatic door locks, and can help police locate the vehicle if it is stolen.

Navigation

OnStar navigation requires the Directions and Connections service plan.

Push to receive directions or have them sent to the vehicle navigation screen. Destinations can also be forwarded to the vehicle from Google Maps™ or MapQuest.com. The OnStar mapping database is continuously updated. Visit www.onstar.com for coverage maps.

Turn-by-Turn Navigation

1. Push to connect to a live Advisor.
2. Request directions.
3. Directions are downloaded to the vehicle.
4. Follow the voice-guided commands.

Using Voice Commands During a Planned Route

Cancel Route

1. Push . System responds: “OnStar ready,” then a tone. Say “Cancel route.” System responds: “Would you like to cancel route directions to your destination?”
2. Say “Yes.” System responds: “OK, route canceled.”
3. Say “Goodbye.” Exits voice commands.

Route Preview

1. Push . System responds: “OnStar ready,” then a tone.
2. Say “Route Preview.” System responds with the next three maneuvers.
3. Say “Goodbye.” Exits voice commands.

Repeat

1. Push . System responds: “OnStar ready,” then a tone.
2. Say “Repeat.” System responds with the last direction given, then responds with “OnStar ready,” then a tone.
3. Say “Goodbye.” Exits voice commands.

Get My Destination

1. Push . System responds: “OnStar ready,” then a tone.
2. Say “Get my destination.” System responds with miles to the destination, then responds with “OnStar ready,” then a tone.
3. Say “Goodbye.” Exits voice commands.

Other Navigation Services Available from OnStar

OnStar eNav: Allows subscribers to send destinations from Google Maps™ and MapQuest.com to their Turn-by-Turn Navigation or screen-based navigation system. When ready, the directions will be downloaded to the vehicle.

Destination Download: Push , then request the Advisor to download directions to the navigation system in the vehicle. After the call ends, push the “Go” button on the navigation screen to begin driving directions.

Destinations can also be downloaded on the go. For information about eNav, Destination Download, and coverage maps visit www.onstar.com.

Connections

OnStar Hands-Free Calling allows calls to be made and received from the vehicle. The vehicle can also be controlled from a cell phone through the OnStar mobile app. See www.onstar.com for coverage maps.

Hands-Free Calling

1. Push . System responds: “OnStar ready.”
2. Say “Dial.” System responds: “Please say the name or number to call.”
3. Say the entire number without pausing, including a “1” and the area code. System responds: “OK calling.”

Retrieve My Number

1. Push . System responds: “OnStar ready.”
2. Say “My Number.” System responds: “Your OnStar Hands-Free Calling number is.”

End a Call

Push . System responds: “Call ended.”

Store a Name Tag for Speed Dialing

1. Push . System responds: “OnStar ready.”
2. Say “Store.” System responds: “Please say the number you would like to store.”
3. Say the entire number without pausing. System responds: “Please say the name tag.”
4. Pick a name tag. “System responds:”About to store <name tag>. Does that sound OK?”
5. Say “Yes” or “No” to try again. System responds: “OK, storing <name tag>.”

Place a Call Using a Stored Number

1. Push . System responds: “OnStar ready.”
2. Say “Call <name tag>.” System responds: “OK, calling <name tag>.”

Verify Minutes and Expiration

Push and say “minutes” then “verify” to check how many minutes remain and their expiration date.

OnStar Mobile App

With an iPhone® or Android™-based mobile device, an OnStar mobile app can be downloaded. The vehicle can be remote started, if equipped, or the doors can be unlocked from anywhere there is cell phone service. It can also check the fuel level, tire pressure, and oil life. It can connect to an OnStar Advisor anytime. For OnStar mobile app compatibility or further information, see www.onstar.com.

Diagnostics

OnStar Vehicle Diagnostics will perform a vehicle check every month. It will check the engine, transmission, antilock brakes, and major vehicle systems. It also checks the tire pressures, if the vehicle is equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. If a diagnostics check is needed between e-mails, push , and an Advisor can run a check.

OnStar Additional Information

Transferring Service

Push to request account transfer eligibility information. The Advisor can assist in canceling or removing account information. If OnStar receives information that vehicle ownership has changed, OnStar may send a voice message to the vehicle, requesting updated account information.

Reactivation for Subsequent Owners

Push and follow the prompts to speak to an Advisor as soon as possible after acquiring the vehicle. The Advisor will update vehicle records and will explain the OnStar service offers and options available.

How OnStar Service Works

Automatic Crash Response, Emergency Services, Crisis Assist, Stolen Vehicle Assistance, Vehicle Diagnostics, Remote Door Unlock, Roadside Assistance, Turn-by-Turn Navigation, and Hands-Free Calling are available on most vehicles. Not all OnStar services are available everywhere or on all vehicles. For more information, a full description of OnStar services, system limitations, and OnStar terms and conditions, see www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada); contact OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or TTY 1-877-248-2080; or push to speak with an Advisor. OnStar services require a vehicle electrical system, wireless service, and GPS satellite technologies to be available and operating for features to function properly. These systems may not operate if the battery is discharged or disconnected.

OnStar service cannot work unless your vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area, and the wireless service provider has coverage, network capacity, reception, and technology compatible with OnStar's service. Service involving location information about the vehicle cannot work unless GPS signals are available, unobstructed, and compatible with the OnStar hardware. OnStar service may not work if the OnStar equipment is not properly installed or it has not been properly maintained. If equipment or software is added, connected, or modified, OnStar service may not work. Other problems beyond OnStar's control may prevent service such as hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather, electrical system design and architecture of the vehicle, damage to the vehicle in a crash, or wireless phone network congestion or jamming.

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-22* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/220/310.

Services for People with Disabilities

Advisors provide services to help subscribers with physical disabilities and medical conditions.

Push for help with:

- Locating a gas station with an attendant to pump gas.
- Finding a hotel, restaurant, etc., that meets accessibility needs.
- Providing directions to the closest hospital or pharmacy in urgent situations.

TTY Users

OnStar has the ability to communicate to the deaf, hard-of-hearing, or speech-impaired customers while in the vehicle. The available dealer-installed TTY system can provide in-vehicle access to all of the OnStar services, except Virtual Advisor and OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation.

Onstar.com

The website provides access to account information, manages the OnStar subscription, and allows viewing of videos of each service. Get subscription plan pricing and sign up for OnStar Vehicle Diagnostics. Click on the "My Account" tab on the home page.

OnStar Personal Identification Number (PIN)

A PIN is needed to access some of the OnStar services, like Remote Door Unlock and Stolen Vehicle Assistance. You will be prompted to change the PIN the first time when speaking with an Advisor. To change the OnStar PIN, call OnStar and provide the Advisor with the current number.

Warranty

OnStar equipment may be warranted as part of the new-vehicle limited warranty. The manufacturer of the vehicle furnishes detailed warranty information.

Languages

The vehicle can be programmed to respond in French or Spanish. Push and ask an Advisor. Advisors can speak French or Spanish.

Potential Issues

Some OnStar services are disabled after five days. OnStar cannot perform Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Assistance after the vehicle has been off continuously for five days. After five days, OnStar can contact Roadside Assistance and a locksmith to help gain access to the vehicle.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

- Obstruction of the GPS can occur in a large city with tall buildings; in parking garages; around airports; in tunnels, underpasses, or parking garages; or in an area with very dense trees. If GPS signals are not available, the OnStar system should still operate to call OnStar. However, OnStar could have difficulty identifying the exact location.
- In emergency situations, OnStar can use the last stored GPS location to send to emergency responders.
- A temporary loss of GPS can cause loss of the ability to send a Turn-by-Turn Navigation route. The Advisor may give a verbal route or may ask for a call back after the vehicle is driven into an open area.

Cellular and GPS Antennas

Avoid placing items over or near the antenna to prevent blocking cellular and GPS signal reception. Cellular reception is required for OnStar to send remote signals to the vehicle.

Unable to Connect to OnStar Message

If there is limited cellular coverage or the cellular network has reached maximum capacity, this message may come on. Push On to try the call again or try again after driving a few miles into another cellular area.

Vehicle and Power Issues

OnStar services require a vehicle electrical system, wireless service, and GPS satellite technologies to be available and operating for features to function properly. These systems may not operate if the battery is discharged or disconnected.

Add-on Electrical Equipment

The OnStar system is integrated into the electrical architecture of the vehicle. Do not add any electrical equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment on page 9-63*. Added electrical equipment may interfere with the operation of the OnStar system and cause it to not operate.

Privacy

The complete OnStar Privacy Statement may be found at www.onstar.com. Privacy-sensitive users of wireless communications are cautioned that the privacy of any information sent via wireless cellular communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept or access transmissions and private communications without consent.

A

Accessories and Modifications 10-3
Accessory Power 9-27
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) 6-3
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-63
Additional Information, OnStar® 14-5
Adjustments
Lumbar, Front Seats 3-5
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 10-13
Air Conditioning 8-1
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment 8-11
Air Intake 8-11
Air Vents 8-10
Airbag System
Check 3-35
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 3-27
Airbag System (cont'd)
Passenger Sensing System 3-29
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 3-26
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 3-27
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 3-25
Where Are the Airbags? 3-24
Airbags
Adding Equipment to the Vehicle 3-34
Passenger Status Indicator . . . 5-16
Readiness Light 5-16
Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles 3-33
System Check 3-22
Alarm System
Anti-theft 2-14
All-Wheel Drive 9-34
AM-FM Radio 7-18, 7-21
Antenna
Satellite Radio 7-27
Anti-theft
Alarm System 2-14
Alarm System Messages 5-41
Antilock Brake
System (ABS) 9-35
Warning Light 5-21
Appearance Care
Exterior 10-102
Interior 10-105
Assistance Program, Roadside 13-7, 13-10
Audio Players 7-28
CD 7-28
CD/DVD 7-30
MP3 7-33
Audio System
Backglass Antenna 7-27
Radio Reception 7-26
Theft-Deterrent Feature 7-2

Automatic
Climate Control System 8-1
Headlamp System 6-3
Transmission 9-31
Transmission Fluid 10-13
Automatic Transmission
Manual Mode 9-33
Shift Lock Control
Function Check 10-27
Auxiliary
Devices 7-39

B

Battery 10-25
Jump Starting 10-94, 10-95
Load Management 6-7
Power Protection 6-8
Voltage and Charging
Messages 5-35
Blade Replacement, Wiper . . . 10-29
Bluetooth 7-57, 7-59, 7-63, 7-69
Brake
System Warning Light 5-20
Brakes 10-23
Antilock 9-35
Assist 9-38
Fluid 10-24
Parking 9-36
System Messages 5-36
Braking 9-4
Break-In, New Vehicle 9-17
Bulb Replacement 10-36
Fog Lamps 6-5
Halogen Bulbs 10-33
Headlamp Aiming 10-30
Headlamps 10-33
Headlamps, Front Turn
Signal, and Parking
Lamps 10-33
High Intensity Discharge
(HID) Lighting 10-33
License Plate Lamps 10-36
Taillamps, Turn Signal,
Stoplamps, and
Back-up Lamps 10-35
Buying New Tires 10-63

C

Calibration 5-5
California
Fuel Requirements 9-53
Perchlorate Materials
Requirements 10-3
Warning 10-3
Camera, Rear Vision 9-49
Canadian Vehicle Owners iii
Capacities and
Specifications 12-2
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 9-30
Trunk 2-13
Winter Driving 9-9
Cautions, Danger, and
Warnings iv
CD Player 7-28
CD/DVD Player 7-30
Center Console Storage 4-2
Chains, Tire 10-68
Charging System Light 5-17

Check
Engine Light 5-17
Ignition
Transmission Lock 10-28
Child Restraints
Infants and Young
Children 3-38
Lower Anchors and
Tethers for Children 3-44
Older Children 3-36
Securing 3-52, 3-55
Systems 3-41
Circuit Breakers 10-38
Cleaning
Exterior Care 10-102
Interior Care 10-105
Climate Control Systems
Automatic 8-1
Dual Automatic 8-5
Clock 5-5
Cluster, Instrument 5-10
Collision Damage Repair 13-15
Compact Spare Tire 10-93
Compass 5-5
Messages 5-36
Compressor Kit,
Tire Sealant 10-71, 10-78
Connections, OnStar® 14-4
Control of a Vehicle 9-4
Convenience Net 4-2
Convex Mirrors 2-17
Coolant
Engine 10-16
Engine Temperature
Gauge 5-14
Engine Temperature
Warning Light 5-24
Cooling System 10-15
Engine Messages 5-37
Courtesy Transportation
Program 13-14
Cruise Control 9-42
Light 5-27
Messages 5-36
Cupholders 4-1
Customer Assistance 13-6
Offices 13-5
Text Telephone (TTY)
Users 13-6
Customer Information
Service Publications
Ordering Information 13-18
Customer Satisfaction
Procedure 13-1, 13-3

D

Damage Repair, Collision 13-15
Danger, Warnings, and
Cautions iv
Data Recorders, Event 13-20
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Defensive Driving 9-3
Delayed Locking 2-12
Devices, Auxiliary 7-39
Diagnostics, OnStar® 14-5

Differential, Limited-Slip 9-41
Distracted Driving 9-2
Dome Lamps 6-6
Door
Ajar Light 5-27
Ajar Messages 5-37
Delayed Locking 2-12
Locks 2-11
Power Locks 2-12
Drive Belt Routing, Engine 12-4
Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 9-34
Driver Efficiency Gauge 5-13
Driver Information
Center (DIC) 5-27
Driving
Characteristics and
Towing Tips 9-57
Defensive 9-3
Drunk 9-3
For Better Fuel Economy 1-27
Highway Hypnosis 9-8
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-8
If the Vehicle is Stuck 9-11
Loss of Control 9-6
Off-Road Recovery 9-6
Driving (cont'd)
Vehicle Load Limits 9-12
Wet Roads 9-7
Winter 9-9
Dual Automatic Climate
Control System 8-5
DVD
Rear Seat Entertainment
System 7-47
DVD/CD Player 7-30

E

Electric Parking Brake Light ... 5-21
Electrical Equipment,
Add-On 9-63
Electrical System
Engine Compartment
Fuse Block 10-38
Fuses and Circuit
Breakers 10-38
Instrument Panel Fuse
Block 10-42
Electrical System (cont'd)
Overload 10-37
Rear Compartment Fuse
Block 10-44
Emergency, OnStar® 14-2
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 10-13
Check and Service Engine
Soon Light 5-17
Compartment Overview 10-6
Coolant 10-16
Coolant Temperature
Gauge 5-14
Coolant Temperature
Warning Light 5-24
Cooling System 10-15
Cooling System Messages ...5-37
Drive Belt Routing 12-4
Exhaust 9-30
Heater 9-26
Oil Life System 10-12
Oil Messages 5-38

Engine (cont'd)
Overheated Protection
Operating Mode 10-21
Overheating 10-19
Power Messages 5-38
Pressure Light 5-25
Running While Parked 9-30
Starting 9-22
Entry Lighting 6-7
Equipment, Towing 9-62
Event Data Recorders 13-20
Exit Lighting 6-7
Extender, Safety Belt 3-20
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder ... 6-2

F

Features
Memory 1-8
Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner 10-13
Flash-to-Pass 6-2
Flashers, Hazard Warning 6-4
Flat Tire 10-69
Changing 10-87
Floor Mats 10-107
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 10-13
Brakes 10-24
Power Steering 10-21
Washer 10-22
Fog Lamps
Bulb Replacement 6-5
Folding Mirrors 2-17
Front Fog Lamp
Light 5-26
Front Seats
Adjustment 3-4
Heated and Ventilated 3-10
Front Storage 4-1
Fuel 9-52
Additives 9-53
Economy Driving 1-27
Filling a Portable Fuel
Container 9-56
Fuel (cont'd)
Filling the Tank 9-55
Foreign Countries 9-53
Gasoline Specifications 9-53
Gauge 5-12
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-25
Recommended 9-53
Requirements, California 9-53
System Messages 5-39
Fuses
Engine Compartment
Fuse Block 10-38
Fuses and Circuit
Breakers 10-38
Instrument Panel Fuse
Block 10-42
Rear Compartment Fuse
Block 10-44

G

Garage Door Opener 5-49
Programming 5-49
Gasoline
Specifications 9-53

Gauges
Driver Efficiency 5-13
Engine Coolant
Temperature 5-14
Fuel 5-12
Odometer 5-12
Speedometer 5-12
Tachometer 5-12
Warning Lights and
Indicators 5-9
General Information
Service and Maintenance 11-1
Towing 9-57
Vehicle Care 10-2
Glove Box 4-1
GM Mobility Reimbursement
Program 13-7

H

Halogen Bulbs 10-33
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-4
Head Restraints 3-2
Head-up Display 5-31
Headlamps
Adaptive Forward
Lighting (AFL) 6-3
Aiming 10-30
Automatic 6-3
Bulb Replacement 10-33
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Flash-to-Pass 6-2
High Intensity Discharge
(HID) Lighting 10-33
High-Beam On Light 5-26
High/Low Beam Changer 6-2
Lamps On Reminder 5-26
Heated
Steering Wheel 5-3
Heated and Ventilated Front
Seats 3-10
Heated Mirrors 2-18
Heater
Engine 9-26
Heating and Air Conditioning . . . 8-1
High Voltage Devices and
Wiring 10-37
High-Beam On Light 5-26
Highway Hypnosis 9-8
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-8
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 9-38
Hood 10-5
Horn 5-3
How to Wear Safety Belts
Properly 3-14

I

Ignition Positions 9-18, 9-20
Ignition Transmission Lock
Check 10-28
Immobilizer 2-15
Infants and Young Children,
Restraints 3-38
Infotainment 7-1
Instrument Cluster 5-10
Introduction iii

J

Jump Starting 10-94, 10-95

K

Key and Lock Messages 5-39
Keyless Entry
  Remote (RKE) System 2-4
Keys 2-2

L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall 10-48
Lamps
  Daytime Running (DRL) 6-2
  Dome 6-6
  Exterior Controls 6-1
  Exterior Lamps Off
    Reminder 6-2
  Headlamps, Front Turn
    Signal, and Parking
    Lamps 10-33
Lamps (cont'd)
  License Plate 10-36
  Malfunction Indicator 5-17
  Messages 5-39
  On Reminder 5-26
  Reading 6-6
  Sun Visor 6-6
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-15
LATCH System
  Replacing Parts after a
    Crash 3-52
LATCH, Lower Anchors and
  Tethers for Children 3-44
Lighting
  Adaptive Forward 6-3
  Entry 6-7
  Exit 6-7
  Illumination Control 6-5
Lights
  Airbag Readiness 5-16
  Antilock Brake System
    (ABS) Warning 5-21
  Brake System Warning 5-20
Lights (cont'd)
  Charging System 5-17
  Cruise Control 5-27
  Door Ajar 5-27
  Electric Parking Brake 5-21
  Engine Coolant
    Temperature Warning 5-24
  Engine Oil Pressure 5-25
  Flash-to-Pass 6-2
  Front Fog Lamp 5-26
  High-Beam On 5-26
  High/Low Beam Changer 6-2
  Low Fuel Warning 5-25
  Safety Belt Reminders 5-15
  Security 5-26
  StabiliTrak® OFF 5-22
  Tire Pressure 5-24
  Traction Control System
    (TCS)/StabiliTrak® 5-23
  Traction Off 5-22
Limited-Slip Differential 9-41

Locks
Delayed Locking 2-12
Door 2-11
Power Door 2-12
Safety 2-12
Loss of Control 9-6
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-25
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 3-44
Lumbar Adjustment 3-5
Front Seats 3-5

M

Maintenance
Records 11-15
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-12
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-17
Manual Mode 9-33
Mass Storage Media (MEM) . . . 7-36
Memory Features 1-8
Memory Seats 3-8
Messages
Anti-theft Alarm System 5-41
Battery Voltage and Charging 5-35
Brake System 5-36
Compass 5-36
Door Ajar 5-37
Engine Cooling System 5-37
Engine Oil 5-38
Engine Power 5-38
Fuel System 5-39
Key and Lock 5-39
Lamp 5-39
Object Detection System 5-39
Ride Control System 5-40
Starting the Vehicle 5-41
Tire 5-41
Transmission 5-42
Vehicle 5-35
Window 5-42
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 2-19
Convex 2-17
Folding 2-17
Heated 2-18
Manual Rearview 2-18
Park Tilt 2-18
Power 2-17
Monitor System, Tire Pressure 10-56
MP3 7-33

N

Navigation
OnStar® 14-2
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-21
Net, Convenience 4-2
New Vehicle Break-In 9-17

O

Object Detection System
Messages 5-39
Object Detection, Side Blind
Zone Alert (SBZA) 9-46
Odometer 5-12
Off-Road
Recovery 9-6
Oil
Engine 10-9
Engine Oil Life System 10-12
Messages 5-38
Pressure Light 5-25
Older Children, Restraints 3-36
Online Owner Center 13-6
OnStar®
Additional Information 14-5
Connections 14-4
Diagnostics 14-5
Emergency 14-2
Navigation 14-2
OnStar® (cont'd)
Overview 14-1
Security 14-2
System, In Brief 1-28
Operation, Infotainment
System 7-13
Ordering
Service Publications 13-18
Outlets
Power 5-7
Overheated Engine
Protection
Operating Mode 10-21
Overheating, Engine 10-19
Overview,
Infotainment
System 7-3, 7-5, 7-7
Overview, OnStar® 14-1

P

Park
Shifting Into 9-27
Shifting Out of 9-29
Tilt Mirrors 2-18
Parking
Assist, Ultrasonic 9-44
Brake 9-36
Brake and P (Park)
Mechanism Check 10-28
Over Things That Burn 9-29
Passenger Airbag Status
Indicator 5-16
Passenger Compartment Air
Filter 8-11
Passenger Sensing System . . . 3-29
Perchlorate Materials
Requirements, California 10-3
Personalization
Vehicle 5-43
Phone
Bluetooth 7-57, 7-59,
7-63, 7-69
Power
Door Locks 2-12
Mirrors 2-17
Outlets 5-7
Protection, Battery 6-8
Retained Accessory (RAP) . . . 9-27

Power (cont'd)
Seat Adjustment 3-5
Steering Fluid 10-21
Windows 2-20
Pregnancy, Using Safety
Belts 3-20
Privacy
Radio Frequency
Identification (RFID) 13-22
Program
Courtesy Transportation 13-14
Proposition 65 Warning,
California 10-3

R

Radio Frequency
Identification (RFID) 13-22
Statement 13-22
Radios
AM-FM Radio 7-18, 7-21
CD/DVD Player 7-30
Reception 7-26
Satellite 7-24
Reading Lamps 6-6
Rear Seat Entertainment
System 7-47
Rear Seats 3-11
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-49
Rearview Mirrors 2-18
Automatic Dimming 2-19
Reclining Seatbacks 3-6
Recommended
Fuel 9-53
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 11-12
Records
Maintenance 11-15
Recreational Vehicle
Towing 10-99
Reimbursement Program,
GM Mobility 13-7
Remote Keyless Entry
(RKE) System 2-3, 2-4
Remote Vehicle Start 2-9
Replacement Bulbs 10-36
Replacement Parts
Airbags 3-35
Maintenance 11-14
Replacing Airbag System 3-35
Replacing LATCH System
Parts after a Crash 3-52
Replacing Safety Belt
System Parts after a Crash . . . 3-21
Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government 13-19
General Motors 13-20
U.S. Government 13-19
Restraints
Where to Put 3-43
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 9-27
Ride Control Systems
Enhanced Traction
System (ETS) 9-41
Messages 5-40
Selective 9-41

Roads
Driving, Wet 9-7
Roadside Assistance
Program 13-7, 13-10
Roof
Sunroof 2-22
Rotation, Tires 10-61
Routing, Engine Drive Belt 12-4
Running the Vehicle While
Parked 9-30

S

Safety Belts 3-13
Care 3-21
Extender 3-20
How to Wear Safety Belts
Properly 3-14
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-15
Reminders 5-15
Replacing after a Crash 3-21
Use During Pregnancy 3-20
Safety Defects Reporting
Canadian Government 13-19
General Motors 13-20
U.S. Government 13-19
Safety Locks 2-12
Safety System Check 3-20
Satellite Radio 7-24
Scheduling Appointments 13-13
Sealant Kit, Tire 10-71, 10-78
Seats
Adjustment, Front 3-4
Head Restraints 3-2
Heated and Ventilated
Front 3-10
Lumbar Adjustment, Front 3-5
Memory 3-8
Power Adjustment, Front 3-5
Rear 3-11
Reclining Seatbacks 3-6
Securing Child
Restraints 3-52, 3-55
Security
Light 5-26
OnStar® 14-2
Vehicle 2-14
Selective Ride Control 9-41
Service
Accessories and
Modifications 10-3
Doing Your Own Work 10-4
Engine Soon Light 5-17
Maintenance Records 11-15
Maintenance, General
Information 11-1
Parts Identification Label 12-1
Publications Ordering
Information 13-18
Scheduling Appointments . . . 13-13
Servicing the Airbag 3-33
Shift Lock Control Function
Check, Automatic
Transmission 10-27

Shifting
Into Park 9-27
Out of Park 9-29
Side Blind Zone Alert 9-46
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change 6-4
Spare Tire
Compact 10-93
Specifications and
Capacities 12-2
Speedometer 5-12
StabiliTrak
OFF Light 5-22
System 9-40
Start Assist, Hills 9-38
Start Vehicle, Remote 2-9
Starter Switch Check 10-27
Starting the Engine 9-22
Starting the Vehicle
Messsages 5-41
Steering 9-4
Steering (cont'd)
Fluid, Power 10-21
Heated Wheel 5-3
Wheel Adjustment 5-2
Wheel Controls 5-2
Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps
Bulb Replacement 10-35
Storage
Mass Media (MEM) 7-36
Storage Areas
Center Console 4-2
Convenience Net 4-2
Front 4-1
Glove Box 4-1
Storing the Tire Sealant
and Compressor Kit 10-87
Stuck Vehicle 9-11
Sun Visor Lamps 6-6
Sun Visors 2-21
Sunroof 2-22
Symbols iv
System
Infotainment 7-1

T

Tachometer 5-12
Taillamps
Bulb Replacement 10-35
Text Telephone (TTY) Users . . . 13-6
Theft-Deterrent
Systems 2-15, 2-16
Immobilizer 2-15
Time 5-5
Tires
Buying New Tires 10-63
Chains 10-68
Changing 10-87
Compact Spare 10-93
Designations 10-51
Different Size 10-65
If a Tire Goes Flat 10-69
Inflation Monitor System 10-57
Inspection 10-60
Messages 5-41
Pressure Light 5-24
Pressure Monitor System . . . 10-56

Tires (cont'd)
Rotation 10-61
Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-71, 10-78
Sealant and Compressor Kit, Storing 10-87
Sidewall Labeling 10-48
Terminology and Definitions 10-51
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 10-65
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 10-67
Wheel Replacement 10-67
When It Is Time for New Tires 10-62
Winter 10-48
Towing
Driving Characteristics 9-57
Equipment 9-62
General Information 9-57
Recreational Vehicle 10-99
Trailer 9-61, 9-62
Vehicle 10-99
Traction
Control System (TCS) 9-38
Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak® Light 5-23
Limited-Slip Differential 9-41
Off Light 5-22
Selective Ride Control 9-41
Trailer
Towing 9-61, 9-62
Transmission
Automatic 9-31
Fluid, Automatic 10-13
Messages 5-42
Transportation Program, Courtesy 13-14
Trunk 2-13
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-4
Turn Signal
Bulb Replacement 10-35

U

Ultrasonic Parking Assist 9-44
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 10-65
Universal Remote System 5-49
Operation 5-52
Programming 5-49
Using This Manual iv

V

Vehicle
Canadian Owners iii
Control 9-4
Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Load Limits 9-12
Messages 5-35
Personalization 5-43
Remote Start 2-9
Security 2-14
Towing 10-99

Vehicle Care
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-87
Tire Pressure 10-54
Ventilation, Air 8-10
Visors 2-21
Voltage Devices and Wiring 10-37

W

Warning
Brake System Light 5-20
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-9
Warnings iv
Cautions and Danger iv
Hazard Flashers 6-4
Washer Fluid 10-22
Wheels
Alignment and Tire Balance 10-67
Different Size 10-65
Replacement 10-67
When It Is Time for New Tires 10-62
Where to Put the Restraint 3-43
Windows 2-19
Messages 5-42
Power 2-20
Windshield
Wiper/Washer 5-3
Winter
Driving 9-9
Winter Tires 10-48
Wiper Blade Replacement 10-29
Wiring, High Voltage Devices 10-37